

**PROJECT MANUAL**  
**FOR**  
**BUILDING ADDITION**

PREPARED FOR:  
**V.I.T. COMMUNITY UNIT SCHOOL DISTRICT #2**  
1502 East U.S. Highway 136  
Table Grove, Illinois 61482

BY:  
**ARCHITECHNICS**  
510 Maine Street  
Quincy, Illinois 62301

March 2020

Design Firm 184.004061  
Architect / Engineer's Project Number: 5938



---

Paul Westerhoff, AIA  
Registered Professional Architect License 001.020538  
License Expires: 11/30/20

3/20/2020  
Date



**SECTION 00 0101  
PROJECT TITLE PAGE**

**Health Life Safety Work:  
Building Addition  
Table Grove, IL**

**ARCHITECHNICS PROJECT NO. 5938**

\*\*\*\*\*

<b>OWNER</b>	<b>V.I.T. COMMUNITY UNIT SCHOOL DISTRICT #2</b>
<b>ARCHITECT / ENGINEER</b>	<b>ARCHITECHNICS 510 MAINE STREET, 10TH FLOOR QUINCY, IL 62301</b>
<b>CURRENT DATE</b>	<b>03/20/2020</b>

I hereby certify that the portion of this technical submission described below was prepared by me or under my direct supervision and responsible charge. I am duly licensed under the laws of the State of Illinois.



Copyright by ARCHITECHNICS. Reproduction of the material herein without the written permission of Architechnics, Inc. violates the Copyright Laws of the United States of America and will be subject to Legal Prosecution.

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**SECTION 00 01100**  
**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**DIVISION 00 – PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS**

00 0101	Project Title Page
00 0110	Table of Contents
00 1113	Advertisement for Bids
00 2113	Instructions to Bidders - AIA Document A701
00 2115	Supplementary Instructions to Bidders
00 2600	Proposed Equivalent Product Procedures
00 4200	Bid Proposal
00 4313	Bid Security Form
00 4325	Proposed Equivalent Product Request Form
00 4550	Illinois Employment Practices
00 4850	Certificate of Compliance with Illinois Drug-Free Workplace Act
00 4870	Certificate of Compliance with Illinois Human Rights Act
00 4880	Certificate Regarding Criminal Background Investigations
00 5200	Standard Short Form of Agreement – AIA Document A105
00 6113	Performance and Payment Bond
00 7200	Standard General Conditions – AIA Document A201
00 7300	Supplementary Conditions
00 7334	Requirements for Substance Abuse Prevention Program
00 7343	Wage Rate Requirements

**DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

01 1000	Summary of Work
01 1419	Use of Site
01 2500	Substitution Procedures
01 2600	Contract Modification Procedures
01 2900	Payment Procedures
01 3100	Project Management and Coordination
01 3300	Submittals Procedures
01 4000	Quality Requirements
01 4100	Regulatory Requirements
01 5000	Temporary Facilities and Controls
01 6600	Product Storage and Handling Procedures
01 7700	Closeout Procedures
01 7823	Operation and Maintenance Data
01 7839	Project Record Documents

**DIVISION 02 – EXISTING CONDITIONS**

02 4100	Minor Demolition for Remodeling
---------	---------------------------------

**DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE**

03 1000	Concrete Forming and Accessories
03 2000	Concrete Reinforcing
03 3000	Cast In Place Concrete

**DIVISION 04 - MASONRY**

04 2000	Unit Masonry
---------	--------------

**DIVISION 05 - METALS**

05 2100	Steel Joist Framing
05 3100	Steel Decking
05 5000	Metal Fabrications

**DIVISION 06 – WOOD AND PLASTICS**

06 1000 Rough Carpentry

DIVISION 07 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

07 1416 Cold Fluid-Applied Waterproofing  
07 1900 Water Repellents  
07 2100 Thermal Insulation  
07 4213.13 Formed Metal Wall Panels  
07 5423 Thermoplastic-Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing  
07 6200 Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim  
07 7100 Roof Specialties  
07 9200 Joint Sealants

DIVISION 08 – DOORS AND WINDOWS

08 1113 Hollow Metal Doors and Frames  
08 1613 Fiberglass Doors  
08 4113 Aluminum Framed Entrances and Storefronts  
08 5113 Aluminum Windows  
08 7100 Door Hardware  
08 8000 Glazing  
08 8700 Window Film

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

09 5123 Acoustical Tile Ceilings  
09 6513 Resilient Base and Accessories  
09 6700 Fluid-Applied Flooring  
09 9113 Exterior Painting  
09 9123 Interior Painting

DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES

10 4413 Fire Protection Cabinets  
10 4416 Fire Extinguishers

DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING

23 0529 Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment  
23 0700 HVAC Insulation  
23 3113 Metal Ducts  
23 3300 Air Duct Accessories  
23 3713 Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles  
23 7413 Packaged Rooftop Units

DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL

26 0500 Electrical General Provisions  
26 0519 Low Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables  
26 0533 Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems  
26 0573 Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study  
26 2717 Equipment Wiring  
26 2726 Wiring Devices  
26 5100 Interior Lighting  
26 5600 Exterior Lighting  
26 9500 Inspections and Testing

DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK

31 1600 Site Preparation  
31 2300 Excavation and Fill

DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS  
32 1313 Concrete Paving  
32 1723 Pavement Markings

**END OF SECTION 00 0110**

**SECTION 00 1113  
ADVERTISEMENT FOR BIDS**

1. Sealed Bids will be received by the V.I.T. Community Unit School District #2, Table Grove, Fulton County, Illinois for installation of the following:

HEALTH LIFE SAFETY WORK:  
BUILDING ADDITION  
Table Grove, IL

Bids will be received at the place, time and date hereinafter stated **and publicly opened**.

PLACE: V.I.T. CUSD #2  
District Office  
1502 East U.S. Highway 136  
Table Grove, IL 61482

TIME: 3:30 p.m. Local Prevailing Time

DATE: Wednesday, April 8, 2020.

2. A Non-mandatory Pre-Bid Meeting will be held Tuesday, March 31, 2020, at 3:30 p.m. at VIT Jr/Sr High School Cafeteria, 1502 East U.S. Highway 136, Table Grove, IL to review the project with prospective bidders.
3. Construction shall be in full accordance with the Bidding Documents which are on file with the Owner and may be examined by prospective bidders at the office of the Architect / Engineer, Architechnics, 510 Maine Street, Quincy, IL 62301

Plans and Specifications for bidding purposes are available at the offices of the Architect, ARCHITECHNICS, 510 Maine St., Quincy, IL 62301. A refundable deposit of \$150.00 (paper) will be required for use of the Plans and Specifications for bidding purposes. A \$50.00 non-refundable fee will be required for digital files.

4. Bids shall be accompanied by a Bid Bond in the amount of 5% of the **TOTAL BASE BID**. A certified check or bank draft, payable to the order of the **V.I.T. CUSD No. 2** equal to this amount will be an acceptable Bid Bond.

Pursuant to Section 10-20.21 of the School Code, awards will be made to the lowest responsible bidder as reasonably determined by the Board of Education considering conformity with specifications, terms of delivery, quality and serviceability. In evaluating these factors, the Board will necessarily consider and compare (relative to the other bidders) the experience of the bidder on this type of project or similar projects, AND the performance history of the bidder regarding conformity with specifications, meeting terms of delivery and quality of work AND the performance history and ability of the bidder to complete the project on time, to service the product (including response time to service calls) and workmanship on the project. **THE BOARD OF EDUCATION IS NOT OBLIGATED TO ACCEPT THE LOWEST DOLLAR BID AND RESERVES THE RIGHT TO REJECT ANY AND ALL BIDS OR TO WAIVE ANY INFORMALITIES, IRREGULARITIES, TECHNICALITIES, OR DEFECTS IN ANY BID SHOULD THE BOARD DEEM IT IN THE BEST INTEREST OF THE SCHOOL DISTRICT TO DO SO.**

Awards, if made, will be made within sixty (60) days following the opening of these bids.



Labor Statutes, Prevailing Wage Rates - In the employment and use of labor, contractors will be required to conform to all Illinois statutory requirements regarding labor and to pay not less than the prevailing rate of wages for all classifications of labor as determined by the Illinois Department of Labor. Prevailing wages are subject to change. Rates are available at the office of the Fulton County Clerk, 100 North Main Street, Lewistown, Illinois 61542. Certified payroll records shall comply with the requirement of 820 ILCS 130/5.

5. Prospective bidders must comply with 30 Illinois Compiled Statutes 570 et seq. regarding preference to Illinois citizens or public works projects.
6. The bidder shall comply with the applicable provisions of the Illinois Human Rights Act specifically including but not limited to the requirement of 775 ILCS 5/2-105 that bidder shall have a written sexual harassment policy in place including at a minimum those requirements of such statutory provision. Said policy must be filed with the VIT CUSD No. 2 prior to commencing work.
7. The bidder shall comply with the requirement of 820 ILCS 265/15 that bidder shall have a written substance abuse prevention program in place including at a minimum those requirements of such statutory provision. Said program must be filed with the VIT CUSD No. 2 prior to commencing work.
8. All construction work on this project must be completed on or before **September 1, 2020.**

Board of Education  
V.I.T. Community Unit School District #2  
Table Grove, Illinois

**END OF SECTION 00 1113**



# AIA® Document A701™ – 2018

## Instructions to Bidders

for the following Project:  
(Name, location, and detailed description)

Health Life Safety Work: Building Addition  
1502 East US Highway 136  
Table Grove, IL 61482

### THE OWNER:

(Name, legal status, address, and other information)

V.I.T CUSD #2  
1502 East US Highway 136  
Table Grove, IL 61482

### THE ARCHITECT:

(Name, legal status, address, and other information)

Architechnics, Inc.  
510 Maine Street  
Quincy, IL 62301

## TABLE OF ARTICLES

- 1 DEFINITIONS
- 2 BIDDER'S REPRESENTATIONS
- 3 BIDDING DOCUMENTS
- 4 BIDDING PROCEDURES
- 5 CONSIDERATION OF BIDS
- 6 POST-BID INFORMATION
- 7 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND
- 8 ENUMERATION OF THE PROPOSED CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

### ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

FEDERAL, STATE, AND LOCAL LAWS MAY IMPOSE REQUIREMENTS ON PUBLIC PROCUREMENT CONTRACTS. CONSULT LOCAL AUTHORITIES OR AN ATTORNEY TO VERIFY REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE TO THIS PROCUREMENT BEFORE COMPLETING THIS FORM.

It is intended that AIA Document G612™-2017, Owner's Instructions to the Architect, Parts A and B will be completed prior to using this document.

## ARTICLE 1 DEFINITIONS

§ 1.1 Bidding Documents include the Bidding Requirements and the Proposed Contract Documents. The Bidding Requirements consist of the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, supplementary instructions to bidders, the bid form, and any other bidding forms. The Proposed Contract Documents consist of the unexecuted form of Agreement between the Owner and Contractor and that Agreement's Exhibits, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, all Addenda, and all other documents enumerated in Article 8 of these Instructions.

§ 1.2 Definitions set forth in the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, or in other Proposed Contract Documents apply to the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.3 Addenda are written or graphic instruments issued by the Architect, which, by additions, deletions, clarifications, or corrections, modify or interpret the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.4 A Bid is a complete and properly executed proposal to do the Work for the sums stipulated therein, submitted in accordance with the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.5 The Base Bid is the sum stated in the Bid for which the Bidder offers to perform the Work described in the Bidding Documents, to which Work may be added or deleted by sums stated in Alternate Bids.

§ 1.6 An Alternate Bid (or Alternate) is an amount stated in the Bid to be added to or deducted from, or that does not change, the Base Bid if the corresponding change in the Work, as described in the Bidding Documents, is accepted.

§ 1.7 A Unit Price is an amount stated in the Bid as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, as described in the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.8 A Bidder is a person or entity who submits a Bid and who meets the requirements set forth in the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.9 A Sub-bidder is a person or entity who submits a bid to a Bidder for materials, equipment, or labor for a portion of the Work.

## ARTICLE 2 BIDDER'S REPRESENTATIONS

§ 2.1 By submitting a Bid, the Bidder represents that:

- .1 the Bidder has read and understands the Bidding Documents;
- .2 the Bidder understands how the Bidding Documents relate to other portions of the Project, if any, being bid concurrently or presently under construction;
- .3 the Bid complies with the Bidding Documents;
- .4 the Bidder has visited the site, become familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and has correlated the Bidder's observations with the requirements of the Proposed Contract Documents;
- .5 the Bid is based upon the materials, equipment, and systems required by the Bidding Documents without exception; and
- .6 the Bidder has read and understands the provisions for liquidated damages, if any, set forth in the form of Agreement between the Owner and Contractor.

## ARTICLE 3 BIDDING DOCUMENTS

### § 3.1 Distribution

§ 3.1.1 Bidders shall obtain complete Bidding Documents, as indicated below, from the issuing office designated in the advertisement or invitation to bid, for the deposit sum, if any, stated therein.

*(Indicate how, such as by email, website, host site/platform, paper copy, or other method Bidders shall obtain Bidding Documents.)*

As stated in the Advertisement for Bids

**§ 3.1.2** Any required deposit shall be refunded to Bidders who submit a bona fide Bid and return the paper Bidding Documents in good condition within ten days after receipt of Bids. The cost to replace missing or damaged paper documents will be deducted from the deposit. A Bidder receiving a Contract award may retain the paper Bidding Documents, and the Bidder's deposit will be refunded.

**§ 3.1.3** Bidding Documents will not be issued directly to Sub-bidders unless specifically offered in the advertisement or invitation to bid, or in supplementary instructions to bidders.

**§ 3.1.4** Bidders shall use complete Bidding Documents in preparing Bids. Neither the Owner nor Architect assumes responsibility for errors or misinterpretations resulting from the use of incomplete Bidding Documents.

**§ 3.1.5** The Bidding Documents will be available for the sole purpose of obtaining Bids on the Work. No license or grant of use is conferred by distribution of the Bidding Documents.

### **§ 3.2 Modification or Interpretation of Bidding Documents**

**§ 3.2.1** The Bidder shall carefully study the Bidding Documents, shall examine the site and local conditions, and shall notify the Architect of errors, inconsistencies, or ambiguities discovered and request clarification or interpretation pursuant to Section 3.2.2.

**§ 3.2.2** Requests for clarification or interpretation of the Bidding Documents shall be submitted by the Bidder in writing and shall be received by the Architect at least seven days prior to the date for receipt of Bids.

*(Indicate how, such as by email, website, host site/platform, paper copy, or other method Bidders shall submit requests for clarification and interpretation.)*

Requests should be made by email. NO EXCEPTIONS

**§ 3.2.3** Modifications and interpretations of the Bidding Documents shall be made by Addendum. Modifications and interpretations of the Bidding Documents made in any other manner shall not be binding, and Bidders shall not rely upon them.

### **§ 3.3 Substitutions**

**§ 3.3.1** The materials, products, and equipment described in the Bidding Documents establish a standard of required function, dimension, appearance, and quality to be met by any proposed substitution.

#### **§ 3.3.2 Substitution Process**

**§ 3.3.2.1** Written requests for substitutions shall be received by the Architect at least ten days prior to the date for receipt of Bids. Requests shall be submitted in the same manner as that established for submitting clarifications and interpretations in Section 3.2.2.

**§ 3.3.2.2** Bidders shall submit substitution requests on a Substitution Request Form if one is provided in the Bidding Documents.

**§ 3.3.2.3** If a Substitution Request Form is not provided, requests shall include (1) the name of the material or equipment specified in the Bidding Documents; (2) the reason for the requested substitution; (3) a complete description of the proposed substitution including the name of the material or equipment proposed as the substitute, performance and test data, and relevant drawings; and (4) any other information necessary for an evaluation. The request shall include a statement setting forth changes in other materials, equipment, or other portions of the Work, including changes in the work of other contracts or the impact on any Project Certifications (such as LEED), that will result from incorporation of the proposed substitution.

**§ 3.3.3** The burden of proof of the merit of the proposed substitution is upon the proposer. The Architect's decision of approval or disapproval of a proposed substitution shall be final.

**§ 3.3.4** If the Architect approves a proposed substitution prior to receipt of Bids, such approval shall be set forth in an Addendum. Approvals made in any other manner shall not be binding, and Bidders shall not rely upon them.

§ 3.3.5 No substitutions will be considered after the Contract award unless specifically provided for in the Contract Documents.

#### § 3.4 Addenda

§ 3.4.1 Addenda will be transmitted to Bidders known by the issuing office to have received complete Bidding Documents.

*(Indicate how, such as by email, website, host site/platform, paper copy, or other method Addenda will be transmitted.)*

Addenda will be distributed by email.

§ 3.4.2 Addenda will be available where Bidding Documents are on file.

§ 3.4.3 Addenda will be issued no later than four days prior to the date for receipt of Bids, except an Addendum withdrawing the request for Bids or one which includes postponement of the date for receipt of Bids.

§ 3.4.4 Prior to submitting a Bid, each Bidder shall ascertain that the Bidder has received all Addenda issued, and the Bidder shall acknowledge their receipt in the Bid.

### ARTICLE 4 BIDDING PROCEDURES

#### § 4.1 Preparation of Bids

§ 4.1.1 Bids shall be submitted on the forms included with or identified in the Bidding Documents.

§ 4.1.2 All blanks on the bid form shall be legibly executed. Paper bid forms shall be executed in a non-erasable medium.

§ 4.1.3 Sums shall be expressed in both words and numbers, unless noted otherwise on the bid form. In case of discrepancy, the amount entered in words shall govern.

§ 4.1.4 Edits to entries made on paper bid forms must be initialed by the signer of the Bid.

§ 4.1.5 All requested Alternates shall be bid. If no change in the Base Bid is required, enter "No Change" or as required by the bid form.

§ 4.1.6 Where two or more Bids for designated portions of the Work have been requested, the Bidder may, without forfeiture of the bid security, state the Bidder's refusal to accept award of less than the combination of Bids stipulated by the Bidder. The Bidder shall neither make additional stipulations on the bid form nor qualify the Bid in any other manner.

§ 4.1.7 Each copy of the Bid shall state the legal name and legal status of the Bidder. As part of the documentation submitted with the Bid, the Bidder shall provide evidence of its legal authority to perform the Work in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. Each copy of the Bid shall be signed by the person or persons legally authorized to bind the Bidder to a contract. A Bid by a corporation shall further name the state of incorporation and have the corporate seal affixed. A Bid submitted by an agent shall have a current power of attorney attached, certifying the agent's authority to bind the Bidder.

§ 4.1.8 A Bidder shall incur all costs associated with the preparation of its Bid.

#### § 4.2 Bid Security

§ 4.2.1 Each Bid shall be accompanied by the following bid security:

*(Insert the form and amount of bid security.)*

As indicated in the Advertisement for Bids

§ 4.2.2 The Bidder pledges to enter into a Contract with the Owner on the terms stated in the Bid and shall, if required, furnish bonds covering the faithful performance of the Contract and payment of all obligations arising thereunder. Should the Bidder refuse to enter into such Contract or fail to furnish such bonds if required, the amount

of the bid security shall be forfeited to the Owner as liquidated damages, not as a penalty. In the event the Owner fails to comply with Section 6.2, the amount of the bid security shall not be forfeited to the Owner.

**§ 4.2.3** If a surety bond is required as bid security, it shall be written on AIA Document A310™, Bid Bond, unless otherwise provided in the Bidding Documents. The attorney-in-fact who executes the bond on behalf of the surety shall affix to the bond a certified and current copy of an acceptable power of attorney. The Bidder shall provide surety bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

**§ 4.2.4** The Owner will have the right to retain the bid security of Bidders to whom an award is being considered until (a) the Contract has been executed and bonds, if required, have been furnished; (b) the specified time has elapsed so that Bids may be withdrawn; or (c) all Bids have been rejected. However, if no Contract has been awarded or a Bidder has not been notified of the acceptance of its Bid, a Bidder may, beginning days after the opening of Bids, withdraw its Bid and request the return of its bid security.

### **§ 4.3 Submission of Bids**

**§ 4.3.1** A Bidder shall submit its Bid as indicated below:

*(Indicate how, such as by website, host site/platform, paper copy, or other method Bidders shall submit their Bid.)*

As indicated in the Advertisement for Bids

**§ 4.3.2** Paper copies of the Bid, the bid security, and any other documents required to be submitted with the Bid shall be enclosed in a sealed opaque envelope. The envelope shall be addressed to the party receiving the Bids and shall be identified with the Project name, the Bidder's name and address, and, if applicable, the designated portion of the Work for which the Bid is submitted. If the Bid is sent by mail, the sealed envelope shall be enclosed in a separate mailing envelope with the notation "SEALED BID ENCLOSED" on the face thereof.

**§ 4.3.3** Bids shall be submitted by the date and time and at the place indicated in the invitation to bid. Bids submitted after the date and time for receipt of Bids, or at an incorrect place, will not be accepted.

**§ 4.3.4** The Bidder shall assume full responsibility for timely delivery at the location designated for receipt of Bids.

**§ 4.3.5** A Bid submitted by any method other than as provided in this Section 4.3 will not be accepted.

### **§ 4.4 Modification or Withdrawal of Bid**

**§ 4.4.1** Prior to the date and time designated for receipt of Bids, a Bidder may submit a new Bid to replace a Bid previously submitted, or withdraw its Bid entirely, by notice to the party designated to receive the Bids. Such notice shall be received and duly recorded by the receiving party on or before the date and time set for receipt of Bids. The receiving party shall verify that replaced or withdrawn Bids are removed from the other submitted Bids and not considered. Notice of submission of a replacement Bid or withdrawal of a Bid shall be worded so as not to reveal the amount of the original Bid.

**§ 4.4.2** Withdrawn Bids may be resubmitted up to the date and time designated for the receipt of Bids in the same format as that established in Section 4.3, provided they fully conform with these Instructions to Bidders. Bid security shall be in an amount sufficient for the Bid as resubmitted.

**§ 4.4.3** After the date and time designated for receipt of Bids, a Bidder who discovers that it made a clerical error in its Bid shall notify the Architect of such error within two days, or pursuant to a timeframe specified by the law of the jurisdiction where the Project is located, requesting withdrawal of its Bid. Upon providing evidence of such error to the reasonable satisfaction of the Architect, the Bid shall be withdrawn and not resubmitted. If a Bid is withdrawn pursuant to this Section 4.4.3, the bid security will be attended to as follows:

*(State the terms and conditions, such as Bid rank, for returning or retaining the bid security.)*

Owner retains the right to retain the bid security

## **ARTICLE 5 CONSIDERATION OF BIDS**

### **§ 5.1 Opening of Bids**

If stipulated in an advertisement or invitation to bid, or when otherwise required by law, Bids properly identified and received within the specified time limits will be publicly opened and read aloud. A summary of the Bids may be made available to Bidders.

### **§ 5.2 Rejection of Bids**

Unless otherwise prohibited by law, the Owner shall have the right to reject any or all Bids.

### **§ 5.3 Acceptance of Bid (Award)**

**§ 5.3.1** It is the intent of the Owner to award a Contract to the lowest responsive and responsible Bidder, provided the Bid has been submitted in accordance with the requirements of the Bidding Documents. Unless otherwise prohibited by law, the Owner shall have the right to waive informalities and irregularities in a Bid received and to accept the Bid which, in the Owner's judgment, is in the Owner's best interests.

**§ 5.3.2** Unless otherwise prohibited by law, the Owner shall have the right to accept Alternates in any order or combination, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Bidding Documents, and to determine the lowest responsive and responsible Bidder on the basis of the sum of the Base Bid and Alternates accepted.

## **ARTICLE 6 POST-BID INFORMATION**

### **§ 6.1 Contractor's Qualification Statement**

Bidders to whom award of a Contract is under consideration shall submit to the Architect, upon request and within the timeframe specified by the Architect, a properly executed AIA Document A305™, Contractor's Qualification Statement, unless such a Statement has been previously required and submitted for this Bid.

### **§ 6.2 Owner's Financial Capability**

A Bidder to whom award of a Contract is under consideration may request in writing, fourteen days prior to the expiration of the time for withdrawal of Bids, that the Owner furnish to the Bidder reasonable evidence that financial arrangements have been made to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. The Owner shall then furnish such reasonable evidence to the Bidder no later than seven days prior to the expiration of the time for withdrawal of Bids. Unless such reasonable evidence is furnished within the allotted time, the Bidder will not be required to execute the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor.

### **§ 6.3 Submittals**

**§ 6.3.1** After notification of selection for the award of the Contract, the Bidder shall, as soon as practicable or as stipulated in the Bidding Documents, submit in writing to the Owner through the Architect:

- .1 a designation of the Work to be performed with the Bidder's own forces;
- .2 names of the principal products and systems proposed for the Work and the manufacturers and suppliers of each; and
- .3 names of persons or entities (including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design) proposed for the principal portions of the Work.

**§ 6.3.2** The Bidder will be required to establish to the satisfaction of the Architect and Owner the reliability and responsibility of the persons or entities proposed to furnish and perform the Work described in the Bidding Documents.

**§ 6.3.3** Prior to the execution of the Contract, the Architect will notify the Bidder if either the Owner or Architect, after due investigation, has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Bidder. If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a proposed person or entity, the Bidder may, at the Bidder's option, withdraw the Bid or submit an acceptable substitute person or entity. The Bidder may also submit any required adjustment in the Base Bid or Alternate Bid to account for the difference in cost occasioned by such substitution. The Owner may accept the adjusted bid price or disqualify the Bidder. In the event of either withdrawal or disqualification, bid security will not be forfeited.

**§ 6.3.4** Persons and entities proposed by the Bidder and to whom the Owner and Architect have made no reasonable objection must be used on the Work for which they were proposed and shall not be changed except with the written consent of the Owner and Architect.

## ARTICLE 7 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND

### § 7.1 Bond Requirements

§ 7.1.1 If stipulated in the Bidding Documents, the Bidder shall furnish bonds covering the faithful performance of the Contract and payment of all obligations arising thereunder.

§ 7.1.2 If the furnishing of such bonds is stipulated in the Bidding Documents, the cost shall be included in the Bid. If the furnishing of such bonds is required after receipt of bids and before execution of the Contract, the cost of such bonds shall be added to the Bid in determining the Contract Sum.

§ 7.1.3 The Bidder shall provide surety bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

§ 7.1.4 Unless otherwise indicated below, the Penal Sum of the Payment and Performance Bonds shall be the amount of the Contract Sum.

*(If Payment or Performance Bonds are to be in an amount other than 100% of the Contract Sum, indicate the dollar amount or percentage of the Contract Sum.)*

### § 7.2 Time of Delivery and Form of Bonds

§ 7.2.1 The Bidder shall deliver the required bonds to the Owner not later than three days following the date of execution of the Contract. If the Work is to commence sooner in response to a letter of intent, the Bidder shall, prior to commencement of the Work, submit evidence satisfactory to the Owner that such bonds will be furnished and delivered in accordance with this Section 7.2.1.

§ 7.2.2 Unless otherwise provided, the bonds shall be written on AIA Document A312, Performance Bond and Payment Bond.

§ 7.2.3 The bonds shall be dated on or after the date of the Contract.

§ 7.2.4 The Bidder shall require the attorney-in-fact who executes the required bonds on behalf of the surety to affix to the bond a certified and current copy of the power of attorney.

## ARTICLE 8 ENUMERATION OF THE PROPOSED CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

§ 8.1 Copies of the proposed Contract Documents have been made available to the Bidder and consist of the following documents:

- .1 AIA Document A105 - 2017, Standard Short Form of Agreement between Owner and Contractor, unless otherwise stated below.  
*(Insert the complete AIA Document number, including year, and Document title.)*

*(Paragraphs Deleted)*

- .2 AIA Document A201™-2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, unless otherwise stated below.  
*(Insert the complete AIA Document number, including year, and Document title.)*



(Paragraphs Deleted)

**.5 Drawings**

Number	Title	Date
Full Set	Health Life Safety Work: Building Addition	March 20, 2020

**.6 Specifications**

Section	Title	Date	Pages
Full Document	Health Life Safety Work: Building Addition	March 20, 2020	All

**.7 Addenda:**

Number	Date	Pages
TBD		

**.8 Other Exhibits:**

*(Check all boxes that apply and include appropriate information identifying the exhibit where required.)*

☐ AIA Document E204™–2017, Sustainable Projects Exhibit, dated as indicated below:  
*(Insert the date of the E204-2017.)*

☐ The Sustainability Plan:

Title	Date	Pages
-------	------	-------

☐ Supplementary and other Conditions of the Contract:

Document	Title	Date	Pages
----------	-------	------	-------

**.9 Other documents listed below:**

*(List here any additional documents that are intended to form part of the Proposed Contract Documents.)*

## **Additions and Deletions Report for** **AIA® Document A701™ – 2018**

This Additions and Deletions Report, as defined on page 1 of the associated document, reproduces below all text the author has added to the standard form AIA document in order to complete it, as well as any text the author may have added to or deleted from the original AIA text. Added text is shown underlined. Deleted text is indicated with a horizontal line through the original AIA text.

Note: This Additions and Deletions Report is provided for information purposes only and is not incorporated into or constitute any part of the associated AIA document. This Additions and Deletions Report and its associated document were generated simultaneously by AIA software at 12:33:45 ET on 03/19/2020.

### **PAGE 1**

Health Life Safety Work: Building Addition  
1502 East US Highway 136  
Table Grove, IL 61482

...

V.I.T CUSD #2  
1502 East US Highway 136  
Table Grove, IL 61482

...

Architechnics, Inc.  
510 Maine Street  
Quincy, IL 62301

### **PAGE 2**

As stated in the Advertisement for Bids

### **PAGE 3**

Requests should be made by email. NO EXCEPTIONS

### **PAGE 4**

Addenda will be distributed by email.

...

As indicated in the Advertisement for Bids

### **PAGE 5**

As indicated in the Advertisement for Bids

**Additions and Deletions Report for AIA Document A701™ – 2018.** Copyright © 1970, 1974, 1978, 1987, 1997 and 2018 by The American Institute of Architects. All rights reserved. **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This document was produced by AIA software at 12:33:45 ET on 03/19/2020 under Order No. 6184970010 which expires on 11/08/2020, and is not for resale.

**User Notes:**

(3B9ADA43)

...

Owner retains the right to retain the bid security

PAGE 7

- ~~.1~~ AIA Document A101™ 2017, Standard Form of Agreement Between A105 - 2017, Standard Short Form of Agreement between Owner and Contractor, unless otherwise stated below.

...

- ~~.2~~ AIA Document A101™ 2017, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, unless otherwise stated below.

...

*(Insert the complete AIA Document number, including year, and Document title.)*

...

- ~~.3~~ .2 AIA Document A201™-2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, unless otherwise stated below.

PAGE 8

- ~~.4~~ AIA Document E203™ 2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, dated as indicated below:

...

*(Insert the date of the E203-2013.)*

...

Full Set

Health Life Safety  
Work: Building Addition

March 20, 2020

...

Full Document

Health Life Safety  
Work: Building Addition

March 20,  
2020

All

...

TBD

## **Certification of Document's Authenticity**

**AIA® Document D401™ – 2003**

I, Todd J. Moore, hereby certify, to the best of my knowledge, information and belief, that I created the attached final document simultaneously with its associated Additions and Deletions Report and this certification at 12:33:45 ET on 03/19/2020 under Order No. 6184970010 from AIA Contract Documents software and that in preparing the attached final document I made no changes to the original text of AIA® Document A701™ - 2018, Instructions to Bidders, as published by the AIA in its software, other than those additions and deletions shown in the associated Additions and Deletions Report.

(Signed)



(Title)

President

(Dated)

03/19/20

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**SECTION 00 2115  
SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS**

1. PRECEDENCE OF SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

These Supplementary Instructions to Bidders take precedence over the INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS, AIA Document A701-18, as hereinafter stated.

2. MODIFICATIONS DELETIONS AND ADDITIONS

The Supplementary Instructions herein modify, delete from, and/or add to the Instructions to Bidders.

- a) Articles, or portions thereof, which are not specifically modified, deleted, or superseded hereby, remain in full effect.

3. OWNER

The "Owner" is: THE BOARD OF EDUCATION  
V.I.T. COMMUNITY UNIT SCHOOL DISTRICT NO. 2  
TABLE GROVE, FULTON COUNTY, ILLINOIS 61482

4. PROJECT

The "Project" is: HEALTH LIFE SAFETY WORK:  
BUILDING ADDITION  
TABLE GROVE, IL

5. BIDS REQUESTED/SCOPE OF WORK

Bids for construction of the Project will be submitted on the forms included with the Bidding Documents.

This project is generally described as:

BASE BID "A" – BUILDING ADDITION

The Bidder shall include all accessories, trim, and all related work and sub-trades to provide a complete, neat, and finished installation.

6. BIDDING DOCUMENTS

Construction shall be in full accordance with the Bidding Documents which are on file with the Owner and may be examined by prospective bidders at the office of the Architect / Engineer, Architechnics, 510 Maine Street, FL 10, Quincy, IL 62301.

Plans and Specifications for bidding purposes are available at the offices of the Architect, ARCHITECHNICS, 510 Maine St., Quincy, IL 62301. A refundable deposit of \$150.00 (paper) will be required for use of the Plans and Specifications for bidding purposes. A \$50.00 non-refundable fee will be required for digital files.

7. SUBSTITUTIONS

See Section 00 2600 Proposed Equivalent Product Procedures.

8. BIDS

Bids shall be submitted on the forms included with the Bidding Documents. Bid Forms may be provided separately for bidding. Bid Forms shall become a part of the Contract documents.

One hard copy of the Bid must be submitted. A bona fide Bid must include the following items:

1. Fully completed Bid Form.
2. Bid Bond for the required amount indicated in the referenced paragraph.

Incomplete Bids will be rejected and unread.

No Bid submitted will be considered by the Owner unless such Bid is accompanied by a Bid Bond made payable to:

Board of Education

V.I.T. Community Unit School District No. 2

Table Grove, Fulton County, Illinois 61482

In the amount of **5%** of the TOTAL BASE BID. A certified check or bank draft payable to the order of **V.I.T. Community Unit School District No. 2** in such amount is an acceptable Bid Bond.

Said Bid Bond shall be forfeited to the Owner in the event that any bidder to whom a contract is awarded fails to enter into Contract with the Owner for the work proposed in Bid.

Bid Bonds will be returned to unsuccessful bidders not later than fourteen (14) days after the formation of the Contract with a successful bidder.

9. DELIVERY OF PROPOSAL

Proposal shall be delivered to the office of the Architect / Engineer, Architechnics, 510 Maine Street, FL 10, Quincy, IL 62301, in an opaque envelope marked "Sealed Bid Enclosed" bearing the title of the project and the name of the bidder.

10. PERFORMANCE AND LABOR/MATERIAL PAYMENT BONDS

The successful bidder, to whom a Contract is awarded, shall provide the Owner, within a period of fourteen (14) days following the date of the notice of such award, a Surety Company's Performance Bond and a Labor/Material Payment Bond, each in an amount equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract Amount. Bonds shall remain in effect until total completion of project.

The Surety Company must have a Policy Holder's rating of A or better and a Financial Rating of Class XII or high in the A.M. Best Company's "KEY RATING GUIDE," and the form used will be acceptable to the Owner. The cost of the Bonds shall be included in the Contractor's Proposal.

11. CONTRACT AWARD

Pursuant to Section 10-20.21 of the School Code, awards will be made to the lowest responsible bidder as reasonably determined by the Board of Education considering conformity with specifications, terms of delivery, quality and serviceability. In evaluating these factors, the Board will necessarily consider and compare (relative to the other bidders) the experience of the bidder on this type of project or similar projects, AND the performance history of the bidder regarding conformity with specifications, meeting terms of delivery and quality of work AND the performance history and ability of the bidder to complete the project on time, to service the product (including response time to service calls) and workmanship on the project. THE BOARD OF EDUCATION IS NOT OBLIGATED TO ACCEPT THE LOWEST DOLLAR BID AND RESERVES THE RIGHT TO REJECT ANY AND ALL BIDS OR TO WAIVE ANY INFORMALITIES, IRREGULARITIES, TECHNICALITIES, OR DEFECTS IN ANY BID SHOULD THE BOARD DEEM IT IN THE BEST INTEREST OF THE SHOOOL DISTRICT TO DO SO.

12. NOTICE TO PROCEED

The successful bidder, if awarded the Contract, shall commence preliminary work immediately. Work on school property while students and staff are present shall be coordinated with the school district.

13. EXAMINATION OF SITE

The Bidder shall carefully examine the site and scope of work. No pleas of ignorance of conditions that exist or conditions or difficulties that may be encountered in the execution of the work as a result of failure to make a proper examination and investigation will be accepted as an excuse for any failure or omission on the part of the Bidder to fulfill in every detail all of the requirements of the Bidding Documents or will be accepted as a basis for any claims whatsoever for extra compensation.

14. FAMILIARIZATION WITH THE WORK

Before submitting his bid, the Bidder shall familiarize himself with the work, rules governing acceptance of his work, site where the work is performed, labor conditions, the conditions and facilities at the site for delivery and installation, all laws, regulations and other factors affecting performance of the work. The prospective bidder shall carefully correlate his observations with the requirement of the bidding documents and contact drawings, and otherwise satisfy himself of the expense and difficulties attending performance of the work, including delivery of material and equipment. The submission of a bid will constitute an incontrovertible representation by the bidder that he has complied with every requirement of this paragraph.

15. SPECIFIED MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

- a) No alterations or changes in the Plans, Specifications, or other instructions enclosed shall be permitted without express written consent of the Owner and Architect.
- b) Any prospective bidder who discovers ambiguities or is in doubt as to the true meaning of any part of the Bidding Documents shall promptly request Architect for an interpretation thereof.
- c) Interpretations will be made only by Addenda, duly issued, and copies of each Addendum will be mailed or delivered to each Bidding Document holder of record.
- d) Unless otherwise specified the Contractor shall provide all materials, tools, automotive and other construction equipment, which may be necessary for the completion of the work described in the specifications. The Contractor shall keep a competent representative on the job and employ persons skilled in the various phases of the work involved. All work shall be performed in a workmanlike manner.
- e) Products and manufacturers not named or specified may be considered upon request in writing to the Architect at least ten (10) days prior to receipt of bids. Products and manufacturers not specifically named or specified in the Bidding Documents, or Addenda or approved by the Architect will not be considered for use on this Project.

16. FAILURE TO EXECUTE CONTRACT

Failure to comply with any of the requirements of these Instructions to execute the Contract within ten (10) days after mailing as specified or to furnish specified bonds and certificates of insurance as required shall be just cause for the annulment of the award. In the event of such annulment of the award, the amount of the bid bond shall become the property of the Owner, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages. Award may then be made to the next lowest responsible bidder as determined in accord with paragraph 8.



17. ACCESS, STORAGE, ETC. ON SITE

The Contractor shall have access **during daylight hours** to that portion of the site on which construction is involved. On-site storage of materials and equipment shall be subject to the written approval of Owner.

18. PROTECTION OF BUILDING, SITE AND ADJOINING PROPERTIES

The Contractor shall be required to take the necessary precautionary measures to insure the protection of the building, site and adjoining properties from damage of any kind resulting from work on this Project. All costs of such precautionary measures, as well as the costs incurred in repair or replacement of damage inflicted, will be borne by the Contractor as a part of his work on this Project.

19. TAX EXEMPT

All bidders are hereby notified that this Project is exempt from Sales Tax on all materials. No bid shall, therefore, include such tax.

20. PROGRESS OF WORK/COMPLETION OF WORK

It is the intent of these Instructions to require aggressive progress to completion once the project is started. Final and total completion of this project shall be on or before **September 1, 2020**.

"Total completion" shall be defined that the Contractor is 100% complete with any and all work (including punch list items), areas of the building under this contract are ready for occupancy and usage by the District, and all of the Contractor's equipment, tools, and supplies are removed from the site.

21. PREVAILING WAGE

Each contractor is required to pay not less than the general prevailing rate of hourly wages for work of a similar character in the locality in which the work is performed, and not less than general prevailing rate of hourly wages for legal holidays and overtime work, as determined by the **Board of Education, V.I.T. Community Unit School District No. 2**, and the **State of Illinois**, Illinois Department of Labor, pursuant to 820 ILCS 130 et seq. These rates are subject to change. Rates are available at the office of the Fulton County Clerk, 100 N. Main Street, Lewistown, Illinois 61542.

22. PRE-BID MEETING, SITE INSPECTION

Interested bidders shall visit the job site prior to Bid Due Date to familiarize themselves with job conditions and to ascertain the extent of required work necessary to complete installation as specified. A Non-mandatory Pre-Bid Meeting will be held for this project on **Tuesday, March 31, 2020 at 3:30 pm** at Table Grove High School, 1502 East U.S. Highway 136, Table Grove, IL to review the project with prospective bidders. To obtain access to the facilities and schedule an additional site visit, Bidder shall call for an appointment:

Table Grove Site: **Charlie Lascelles (309) 256-9189**

23. FACILITIES USAGE

Bidders are advised that the school's toilet facilities will not be available to workmen. STATE LAW PROHIBITS THE USE OF TOBACCO ON ALL SCHOOL PROPERTY. THIS MEANS THAT INSIDE AND OUTSIDE OF ALL BUILDINGS NO USE OF TOBACCO PRODUCTS WILL BE PERMITTED.

24. WORK RESTRICTIONS

None other than 6:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m., unless given approval by the Owner.

25. DAILY CLEANUP

Contractor shall provide daily clean up of material and tools in work areas at the close of each workday unless otherwise approved in writing by the Owner or Architect.

26. WRITTEN SPECIFICATIONS

NO DEVIATION FROM THE BIDDING DOCUMENTS WILL BE PERMITTED OR ACCEPTED WITHOUT WRITTEN AUTHORIZATION, SIGNED BY BOTH THE ARCHITECT AND THE OWNER.

27. PROJECT CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCE

As indicated in the Bid Proposal, this project shall include a project contingency allowance of **\$20,000.00** for Base Bid "A. This money is to be used only after the issuance of a Change Order. At close out of the Contract, money remaining in the contingency allowance will be credited back to the Owner via a Change Order prepared by the Architect.

28. STATUTORY REQUIREMENTS

All applicable Federal and State laws, and the rules and regulations of all authorities having jurisdiction over construction of the project, shall apply to the Contract throughout, and they will be deemed to be included in the contract the same as though written therein full.

29. PROTECTIVE PRECAUTIONS

The Bidder, upon receiving contract acceptance, shall be able to proceed with work immediately after the published start date, subject to the following conditions.

- a) Submit, discuss and obtain approval of the proposed schedule of work from the Owner and the Architect.
- b) Every precaution must be taken to prevent any damage, loss or injury to any person, or to any property of the Owner.
- c) All utilities on the properties shall be kept in proper operating condition at all times. Should there be a need to temporarily disconnect any systems, the Contractor shall notify, in writing, the following entities, when the existing system is going to be inoperative, and that the site will be without a particular service for a period not to exceed one (1) day. Give a minimum of two days notice to Owner.
  1. Owner.
  2. Architect.
  3. The Fire Department.
  4. Owner's alarm systems vendor, if any.
  5. Any other entity or department appropriate or responsible for a specific service.
- d) The same notification shall be provided by the Contractor if any of the other utilities will be temporarily inoperative.
- e) It is mandatory that the fire lanes be kept free of any obstructions at all times, unless otherwise authorized by the Owner and the Fire Department.
- f) Parking for construction workers will be in areas as discussed with and designated by Owner, and must be strictly adhered to.

- g) During the initial start-up and commissioning phase, all fire alarm, security alarm, any other type of protection system and supervisory alarm MUST BE operable at all times when the buildings are occupied or could be occupied. If one of the systems is down, the Owner, Architect, fire department, Alarm Systems, Inc., and any other entity or department appropriate or responsible for a specific service must be notified. The Contractor is responsible for monitoring and maintaining these systems are operable and in safe condition at all times.

### 30. ASBESTOS/HAZARDOUS MATERIAL

No forms or types of asbestos or asbestos-containing products are permitted in this building project. By submitting a proposal of this project, the prime contractors and subcontractors, suppliers, etc. guarantee that no asbestos-containing products are being included.

In accordance with 40 CFR Part 763 which pertains to Asbestos Containing Materials and the Hazard Communication Standard (HCS) 29 CFR 1910.1200 notification is hereby given that asbestos containing materials and/or chemicals exist within the V.I.T Public School District buildings which you and/or your employees must be made aware.

Owner will meet the HCS and requirements for notification of short term workers by posting a notice on entrance doors of its buildings which will advise contractors, repair persons, installers, delivery persons, vendors and visitors to register in the Main Office where both the Asbestos Management Plan and Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) for chemicals can be viewed.

Owner further advises that any hazardous chemicals which you plan to bring into the School District Buildings during the performance of your work must be disclosed to Owner before bringing them upon the premises. This may be accomplished by either calling the information contained on the MSDS for that project to the Risk Management at 228-4084 or by faxing a copy of the MSDS to Risk Management at 221-3499.

Contractor will comply with all OSHA requirements, specifically including but not limited to the Hazard Communication Standard 29 CFR 1910.1200, Control of Hazardous Energy Standard 29 CFR 1910.147, and Combined Space Entry 29 CFR 1910.146.

### 31. CERTIFICATION OF COMPLIANCE WITH ARTICLE 33E OF THE CRIMINAL CODE OF 1961

By signing and submitting the Bid Form to the Owner, the Bidder certifies that the Bidder is not barred from bidding on the contract as a result of a conviction for either bid-rigging or bid rotating under Articles 33E of the Criminal Code of 1961.

### 32. PUBLIC CONTRACTORS - WRITTEN SEXUAL HARASSMENT POLICY

Public Act 87-1257, effective July 1, 1993, amends the Illinois Human Rights Act (Section 2-105) by requiring that every party to a public contract and every eligible bidder shall have a written sexual harassment policy that shall include, at a minimum, the following information.

- (i) The illegality of sexual harassment;
- (ii) The definition of sexual harassment under state law;
- (iii) A description of sexual harassment, utilizing examples;
- (iv) The contractor's internal complaint process including penalties;
- (v) The legal recourse, investigative and complaint process available through the Illinois

Department of Human Rights and the Human Rights Commission;

- (vi) Direction on how to contact the Department and Commission; and
- (vii) Protection against retaliation as provided by Section 6-101 of the Human Rights Act.

Finally, the Bidder must provide a copy of such written policy to the Dept. of Human Rights upon request.

33. Owner's designated contact person on this project will be as follows:  
Table Grove Site: **Charlie Lascelles (309) 256-9189**

34. SCHOOL BOARD – REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION FROM INDIVIDUAL MEMBERS OF THE BOARD OF EDUCATION

The Superintendent and the administrative team will make every effort to keep the Board of Education informed in all matters of business it deals with in the course of carrying out its duties. From time to time, the Board as a whole may request more information than was provided to them. Such requests will be acted upon by the entire Board of Education in the form of a directive to the Superintendent. Individual members of the Board of Education who have requests for special reports, extra information or other data, shall present such requests to the Superintendent who shall respond to such requests in consultation with the President of the Board of Education. The decision of the President and Superintendent is subject to review by the Board of Education. Board members as individuals shall not request information from anyone in the employ of the district, a private contractor doing business with the district or any employee of said contractor but shall make their requests through the Superintendent.

35. The contractor shall not send to any school building or school property any employee or agent who is a child sex offender as defined in the Child Sex Offender and Murdered Community Notification Act. It is the responsibility of the contractor to contact on a regular basis the local law enforcement authority where each employee or agent resides to determine if the employee is on the list of registered felons who have committed child sex offenses. The contractor shall also provide the District with the name and address of each employee who will perform work on school property and require that the employee submit to a criminal history background investigation.

36. SUBCONTRACTORS, SUPPLIERS AND OTHERS

a) If the OWNER or ENGINEER/ARCHITECT requires the identity of certain Subcontractors, Suppliers and individuals, or entities to be submitted in advance of the specified date prior to the Effective Date of the Agreement, the apparent Successful Bidder, and any other Bidder so requested, shall within five days after the Bid opening to submit to OWNER or ENGINEER/ARCHITECT a list of all such Subcontractors, Suppliers, individuals, or entities proposed for those portions of the work for which such identification is required. Such list shall be accompanied by an experience statement with pertinent information regarding similar projects and other evidence of qualification for each such Subcontractor, Supplier, individual, or entity if requested by OWNER or ENGINEER/ARCHITECT. If OWNER or ENGINEER/ARCHITECT, after due investigation, has reasonable objection or cause to any proposed Subcontractor, Supplier, individual, or entity, OWNER or ENGINEER/ARCHITECT may before the Notice of Award is given, request apparent Successful Bidder to submit a substitute in which case the apparent Successful Bidder shall submit an acceptable substitute, and Bidder's Bid price will not change by such substitution.

- b) If apparent Successful Bidder declines to make any such substitution, OWNER may award the Contract to the next lowest Bidder that proposes to use acceptable Subcontractors, Suppliers, individuals, or entities. Declining to make requested substitutions will not constitute grounds for forfeiture of the Bid security of any Bidder. Any Subcontractor, Supplier, individual, or entity so listed and against which OWNER or ENGINEER/ARCHITECT makes no written objection prior to the giving of the Notice of Award will be deemed acceptable to

OWNER and ENGINEER/ARCHITECT subject to revocation of such acceptance after the Effective Date of the Agreement as provided in Paragraph 6.06 of the General Conditions.

- c) CONTRACTOR shall not be required to employ any Subcontractor, Supplier, individual, or entity against whom CONTRACTOR has reasonable objection.

END OF SECTION 00 2115

**SECTION 00 2600  
PROPOSED EQUIVALENT PRODUCT PROCEDURES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Proposed Equivalent Product: Requests for changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those indicated in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, submitted prior to receipt of bids.

**1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Compatibility of Equivalents: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed equivalent products with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

**1.3 PROPOSED EQUIVALENT PRODUCT**

- A. Proposed Equivalent Product, General: By submitting a bid, the Bidder represents that its bid is based on materials and equipment described in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, including Addenda. Bidders are encouraged to request approval of qualifying equivalent materials and equipment when the Specifications Sections list materials and equipment by product or manufacturer name.
- B. Proposed Equivalent Product will be received and considered by Owner when the following conditions are satisfied, as determined by Architect; otherwise requests will be returned without action:
  - 1. Extensive revisions to the Contract Documents are not required.
  - 2. Proposed changes are in keeping with the general intent of the Contract Documents, including the level of quality of the Work represented by the requirements therein.
  - 3. The request is made on the **Proposed Equivalent Product Request Form (Section 00 4325)** included in the Bidding Document is fully documented, and properly submitted.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Proposed Equivalent Product: Submit to Architect. Proposed Equivalent Product must be made in writing in compliance with the following requirements:
  - 1. Requests for substitution of materials and equipment will be considered if received no later than 10 days prior to date of bid opening, no exceptions.
  - 2. Submittal Format: Submit 2 copies of each written or electronic Proposed Equivalent Product Request Form included in the Bidding Documents.

B. Architect's Action:

1. Architect may request additional information or documentation necessary for evaluation of the Proposed Equivalent Product. Architect will notify all bidders of acceptance of the proposed substitute by means of an Addendum to the Procurement and Contracting Documents.

- C. Architect's approval of a substitute during bidding does not relieve Contractor of the responsibility to submit required shop drawings and to comply with all other requirements of the Contract Documents.

**END OF SECTION 00 2600**

RETURN WITH BID

SECTION 00 4200  
BID PROPOSAL

DATE \_\_\_\_\_

TO: BOARD OF EDUCATION  
V.I.T. COMMUNITY UNIT SCHOOL DISTRICT NO. 2  
TABLE GROVE, FULTON COUNTY, ILLINOIS

The undersigned offers the following proposal pertaining to

**HEALTH LIFE SAFETY WORK: BUILDING ADDITION**

Board of Education, V.I.T. Community Unit School District No. 2, Table Grove, Fulton County, Illinois, in  
accord with the Bidding Documents prepared for this work, **Project No. 5938** by **ARCHITECHNICS**.

The undersigned bidder, having inspected the site of the proposed work, having familiarized himself with  
all the conditions affecting the work, and having examined the Bidding Documents prepared by  
**ARCHITECHNICS** hereby proposes to furnish all labor, materials, equipment, and services for  
construction and installation of: **HEALTH LIFE SAFETY WORK: PARKING LOT REPLACEMENT.**

1. **BASE BID "A" – BUILDING ADDITION** \$ \_\_\_\_\_
2. **PROJECT CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCE** \$ 20,000.00  
(Refer to Supplementary Instructions to Bidders for Terms of Allowance)
3. **TOTAL BASE BID "A" - CONSTRUCTION BASE BID  
PLUS PROJECT CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCE** \$ \_\_\_\_\_
4. **ACKNOWLEDGE THE DATE BY WHICH THIS PROJECT  
WILL BE SUBSTANTIALLY COMPLETED AND FINALLY  
AND TOTALLY COMPLETED FOR USE AND OCCUPANCY  
BY THE OWNER** \_\_\_\_\_  
(Refer to Item 20 - "Supplemental Instructions to Bidders") (Initial)
5. **BID DEPOSIT** - Check box at right for compliance with 5%  
Bid Deposit requirement. ☐
6. **ADDENDA** - Indicate receipt, by number of all Addenda issued  
for this work. \_\_\_\_\_
7. **By submission of this bid, the bidder agrees that no deviation from the Bidding  
Documents will be permitted without written authorization signed by both the Architect  
and the School District.**
8. By submission of this bid, the bidder agrees that the bidder's official dollar bid figure listed on this  
bid form on this project shall remain in effect for a period of sixty (60) days from the date of the bid  
opening.
9. Any contract resulting from this bid will not be considered effective until all bonds and insurance  
requirements listed in the Bidding Documents have been reviewed and approved in writing by the  
Architect.



**RETURN WITH BID**

10. TOTAL CONTRACT AMOUNT ACCEPTED BY OWNER:

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Do not fill in this space; to be completed by Owner).

SIGNED:

ACCEPTED:

BOARD OF EDUCATION  
V.I.T. CUSD NO. 2  
TABLE GROVE, FULTON COUNTY, ILLINOIS

\_\_\_\_\_  
(NAME OF BIDDER)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(STREET ADDRESS)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(CITY, STATE)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(AUTHORIZED SIGNATURE, TITLE)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(AUTHORIZED SIGNATURE, DATE)

**END OF SECTION 00 4200**

**RETURN WITH BID**

**SECTION 00 4313  
BID SECURITY FORM**

Project: **HEALTH LIFE SAFETY WORK: BUILDING ADDITION**

WE \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ as PRINCIPAL, and \_\_\_\_\_

as SURETY, are held and firmly bound unto the **V.I.T. COMMUNITY UNIT SCHOOL DISTRICT #2** hereinafter called "Owner" in the penal sum of 5% of the TOTAL BASE BID price, or for the amount specified in the "Bid Proposal" in effect on the date of invitation for bids. We bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors, and assigns, jointly to pay to the Owner this sum under the conditions of this instrument.

WHEREAS THE CONDITION OF THE FOREGOING OBLIGATION IS SUCH that, said PRINCIPAL is submitting a written proposal to the Owner for the construction of the work designated as the above section.

THEREFORE, if the proposal is accepted and a contract awarded to the PRINCIPAL by the Owner for the above-designated project, and the PRINCIPAL shall within Fourteen (14) days after award enter into a formal contract, furnish surety or cash bond guaranteeing the faithful performance of the work, and furnish evidence of the required insurance coverage, all as provided in the "General Conditions" and applicable Supplemental Conditions, then this obligation shall become void; otherwise it shall remain in full force and effect.

IN THE EVENT the Owner determines the PRINCIPAL has failed to enter into a formal contract in compliance with any requirements set forth in the preceding paragraph, then the Owner shall immediately be entitled to recover the full penal sum set out above together with all court costs, all attorney fees, and any other expense of recovery.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, the said PRINCIPAL and the said SURETY have caused this instrument to be signed by their respective officers and their corporate seals to be hereunto affixed this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ AD, 20 \_\_\_\_\_.

**PRINCIPAL**

_____ (Company Name)	_____ (Company Name)
By: _____ (Signature & Title)	By: _____ (Signature & Title)

(if PRINCIPAL is a joint venture of two or more contractors, the company names, seals and authorized signatures of each contractor must be affixed.)

**SURETY**

_____ (Name of Surety)	By: _____ (Signature of Attorney-in-Fact)
---------------------------	--

STATE OF \_\_\_\_\_,

**RETURN WITH BID**

COUNTY OF \_\_\_\_\_

I, \_\_\_\_\_, a Notary Public in and for said County, do hereby  
certify that \_\_\_\_\_

(Insert names of individuals signing on behalf of PRINCIPAL & SURETY)

who are each personally known to me to be the same persons whose names are subscribed to the foregoing instrument on behalf of PRINCIPAL and SURETY, appeared before me this day in person and acknowledged respectively, that they signed, sealed, and delivered said instrument as their free and voluntary act for the uses and purposes therein set forth.

Given under my hand and notarial seal this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ A.D. 20\_\_\_\_.

My Commission expires \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public

**END OF SECTION 00 4313**

**SECTION 00 4325  
PROPOSED EQUIVALENT PRODUCT REQUEST FORM**

**TO:**               **Architechnics**

**Project:**       **Parking Lot Replacement**

**We hereby submit for your consideration the following product instead of the specified item for the above project:**

<u><b>Section</b></u>	<u><b>Paragraph</b></u>	<u><b>Specified Item</b></u>
-----------------------	-------------------------	------------------------------

**Proposed Equivalent Product:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Attach complete technical data including laboratory test if applicable.  
Include complete information changes to Drawings and/or Specifications which proposed equivalent product require for proper installation.**

**Fill in blanks below, use additional sheets if necessary:**

- A. Does the proposed equivalent product affect dimensions shown on Drawings?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- B. Will the undersigned pay for changes to building design, including engineering and detailing costs caused by proposed equivalent product, if any?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- C. What effect does proposed equivalent product have on other trades?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- D. Differences between proposed equivalent product and specified item?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- E. Manufacturer's guarantees of proposed and specified items are:  
\_\_\_\_\_  
  
\_\_\_\_\_ Same        \_\_\_\_\_ Different (explain on attachment)

The undersigned states that the function, appearance and quality are equivalent or superior to the specified item.

Submitted by:

For use by Design Consultant

Signature \_\_\_\_\_  
Firm \_\_\_\_\_  
Address \_\_\_\_\_  
Telephone \_\_\_\_\_

Accepted _____	Accepted as Noted _____
Not Accepted _____	Received to Late _____
By _____	
Date _____	
Remarks _____	

**END OF SECTION 00 4325**



**SECTION 00 4550  
ILLINOIS EMPLOYMENT PRACTICES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. In addition to all other labor requirements set forth in this proposal and in the Standard Specifications, during the performance of this contract, the Contractor for itself, its assignees, and successors in interest (hereinafter referred to as the "Contractor") agrees as follows:

**1.2 SELECTION OF LABOR**

- A. The Contractor shall comply with all Illinois statutes pertaining to the selection of labor. If, at the time this contract is executed, or if during the term of this contract, there is excessive unemployment in Illinois as defined in the employment of Illinois Workers on Public Works Acts, 30 ILCS 570-0.01et seq., as two consecutive months of unemployment exceeding 5%, the Contractor is required to employ Illinois laborers. An "Illinois laborer" is defined as any person who has resided in Illinois for at least thirty (30) days and intends to become or remain an Illinois resident. *(This section placed on hold March 19, 2003, contractor to verify status for compliance)*

**1.3 EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY**

- A. In the event of the Contractor's non-compliance with the provisions of the Equal Employment Opportunity Clause, the Illinois Human Right's Act, or the Rules and Regulations of the Illinois Department of Human Rights ("Department"), the Contractor may be declared ineligible for future contracts or subcontracts with the State of Illinois or any of its political subdivisions or municipal corporations, and the contract may be cancelled or voided in whole or in part, and such other sanctions or penalties may be imposed or remedies invoked as provided by statute or regulation. During the performance of this contract, the Contractor agrees as follows:
1. That it will not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, religion, sex, national origin, ancestry, age, marital status, physical or mental handicap unrelated to ability, or unfavorable discharge from military service, and further that it will examine all job classifications to determine if minority persons or women are underutilized and will take appropriate affirmative action to rectify any such underutilization.
  2. That, if it hires additional employees in order to perform this contract or any portion hereof, it will determine the availability of minorities and women in the area(s) from which it may reasonably recruit and it will hire for each job classification for which employees are hired in such a way that minorities and women are not underutilized.
  3. That, in all solicitations or advertisements for employees placed by it or on its behalf, it will state that all applicants will be afforded equal opportunity without discrimination because of race, color, religion, sex, national origin, ancestry, age, marital status, physical or mental handicap unrelated to ability or unfavorable discharge from military service.
  4. That it will send to each labor organization or representative of workers with which it has or is bound by a collective bargaining or other agreement or understanding, a notice advising such labor organization or representative of the Contractor's obligations under

the Illinois Human Rights Act and the Department's Rules and Regulations. If any such labor organization or representative fails or refuses to cooperate with the Contractor in its efforts to comply with such Act and Rules and Regulations, the Contractor will promptly so notify the Illinois Department of Human Rights and the Local Contracting Agency and will recruit employees from other sources when necessary to fulfill its obligations thereunder. That it will submit reports as required by the Department of Human Rights Rules and Regulations, furnish all relevant information as may from time to time be requested by the Department or the Local Contracting Agency, and in all respects comply with the Illinois Human Rights Act and the Department's Rules and Regulations.

5. That it will permit access to all relevant books, records, accounts and work sites by personnel of the Local Contracting Agency and the Illinois Department of Human Rights for purposes of Investigation to ascertain compliance with the Illinois Human Rights Act and the Department's Rules and Regulations.
6. That it will include verbatim or by reference the provision of this clause in every subcontract so that such provisions will be binding upon every such subcontractor. In the same manner as with other provisions of this contract, the Contractor will be liable for compliance with applicable provisions of this clause by all its subcontractors; and further it will promptly notify the Local Contracting Agency and the Illinois Department of Human Rights in the event any subcontractor fails or refuses to comply therewith. In addition, the Contractor will not utilize any subcontractor declared by the Illinois Human Rights Commission to be ineligible for contracts or subcontracts with the State of Illinois or any of its political subdivisions or municipal corporations.

**END OF SECTION 00 4550**

**SECTION 00 4850**  
**CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE WITH ILLINOIS DRUG-FREE WORKPLACE ACT**

1.1 CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE WITH ILLINOIS DRUG-FREE WORKPLACE ACT  
INFORMATION

- A. \_\_\_\_\_,  
Contractor, having 25 employees, does hereby certify pursuant to Section 3 of the Illinois Drug-Free Workplace Act (Ill. Rev. Stat. ch. 127 par. 132.313) that he, she, it shall provide a drug free workplace for all employees engaged in the performance of work under the contract by complying with the requirements of the Illinois Drug-Free Workplace Act and, further certified, that he, she, it is not ineligible for award of this contract by reason of debarment for a violation of the Illinois Drug-Free Workplace Act.
- B. Firm Name: \_\_\_\_\_
- C. By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Authorized Agent of Contractor)

**END OF SECTION 00 4850**



**This page intentionally left blank.**

**SECTION 00 4870**  
**CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE WITH ILLINOIS HUMAN RIGHTS ACT**

1.1 CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE WITH ILLINOIS HUMAN RIGHTS ACT INFORMATION

- A. \_\_\_\_\_,  
Contractor, does hereby certify pursuant to P.A. 87-1257, the Illinois Human Rights Act, that he, she, it has adopted a written sexual harassment policy that includes at a minimum the following information: (i) the illegality of sexual harassment; (ii) the definition of sexual harassment under Illinois law; (iii) a description of sexual harassment, utilizing examples; (iv) an employer's internal complaint process, including penalty; (v) the legal recourse, investigative and complaint process available through the Department of Human Rights Commission; (vi) directions on how to contact the Department and Commission; and (vii) protection against retaliation as provided by section 6-101 or the Illinois Human Rights Act.
- B. Firm Name: \_\_\_\_\_
- C. By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Authorized Agent of Contractor)

**END OF SECTION 00 4870**

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**SECTION 00 4880**  
**CERTIFICATE REGARDING CRIMINAL BACKGROUND INVESTIGATIONS**

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. All employees performing work inside the building or in other ways in direct contact with students shall be required to have and pass a background check performed by the local ROE (Regional Office of Education). The cost of these background investigations shall be the responsibility of the contractor (\$50 per background check). The ROE does not accept credit or debit cards. Employees are to fill out and bring the attached forms with them to receive their background check. A list of employee's names to have their background checked shall be provided by each contractor prior to having the background checks performed for tracking purposes. Contractors to schedule appointments for background checks directly with the ROE's office.

1.2 CERTIFICATION REGARDING CRIMINAL BACKGROUND INVESTIGATION INFORMATION

- A. Contractor hereby represents, warrants, and certifies that no officer or director thereof has any knowledge that any employee has been convicted of committing or attempting to commit "Criminal Code of 1961," 720ILCS, Sections 5/11-6 (Indecent solicitation of a child), 5/11-9 (Public indecency), 5/11-14 (Prostitution), 5/11-15 (Soliciting for a prostitute), 5/11-15.1 (Soliciting for a juvenile prostitute), 5/77-19 (Pimping), 5/11-19.1 (Juvenile pimping), 5/11-19.2 Exploitation of a child, 5/11-20 (Obscenity), 5/11-20.1 (Sexual assault), 5/13-14 (Aggravated criminal sexual abuse), and/or those offenses defined in the "Cannabis Control Act," 720 ILCS, 550/ et. seq. (except the "Illinois Controlled Substance Act," 720 ILCS 570/100 et. seq. and/or any offense committed or attempted in any other state or against the laws of the United States, which if committed or attempted in this State, would have been punishable as one or more of the foregoing offenses. Contractor further agrees that it shall not employ any person who have or may have direct, daily contact with the pupils or any school in the district, and for whom a criminal background investigation has not been conducted pursuant hereto and further represents and agrees that all applicants for any such employment shall furnish with their applications the attached written "Authorization for a Criminal Background Information" form authorizing the Board of Education to request a criminal background investigation of said applicant pursuant to Section 5/10-21.9 of the School Code of Illinois and to receive criminal history record information pursuant thereto to determine if the applicant has been convicted of committing or attempting to commit any of the criminal or drug offenses enumerated above. Contractor further represents, warrants, and verifies that no applicant for employment with respect to whom the criminal investigation reveals any conviction for committing and/or attempting to commit any of the above enumerated offenses, shall be employed thereby in any position that involves or may involve contact with the students of the school district. This certification is executed on the date hereinafter indicated by the designated contractor by its duly authorized officer.

B. By: \_\_\_\_\_

C. Its: \_\_\_\_\_

D. Dated: \_\_\_\_\_.

**END OF SECTION 00 4880**

**This page intentionally left blank.**



# AIA® Document A105™ – 2017

## Standard Short Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor

**AGREEMENT** made as of the    day of    in the year  
(In words, indicate day, month and year.)

**BETWEEN** the Owner:  
(Name, legal status, address and other information)

V.I.T CUSD #2  
1502 East US Highway 136  
Table Grove, IL 61482

and the Contractor:  
(Name, legal status, address and other information)

for the following Project:  
(Name, location and detailed description)

Health Life Safety Work: Building Addition  
1502 East US Highway 136  
Table Grove, IL 61482

The Architect:  
(Name, legal status, address and other information)

Architechnics, Inc.  
510 Maine Street  
Quincy, IL 62301

The Owner and Contractor agree as follows.

### ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

Init.

## TABLE OF ARTICLES

- 1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS
- 2 DATE OF COMMENCEMENT AND SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION
- 3 CONTRACT SUM
- 4 PAYMENTS
- 5 INSURANCE
- 6 GENERAL PROVISIONS
- 7 OWNER
- 8 CONTRACTOR
- 9 ARCHITECT
- 10 CHANGES IN THE WORK
- 11 TIME
- 12 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION
- 13 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY
- 14 CORRECTION OF WORK
- 15 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
- 16 TERMINATION OF THE CONTRACT
- 17 OTHER TERMS AND CONDITIONS

### ARTICLE 1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

The Contractor shall complete the Work described in the Contract Documents for the Project. The Contract Documents consist of

- .1 this Agreement signed by the Owner and Contractor;
- .2 the drawings and specifications prepared by the Architect, dated March 20, 2020 , and enumerated as follows:

Drawings:

**Number**

Full Set

**Title**

Health Life Safety  
Work:Building Addition

**Date**

March 20, 2020

Specifications:

**Section**

Full Document

**Title**

Health Life Safety Work:  
Building Addition

**Pages**

All

- .3 addenda prepared by the Architect as follows:

Init.

Number  
TBD

Date

Pages

- .4 written orders for changes in the Work, pursuant to Article 10, issued after execution of this Agreement; and
- .5 other documents, if any, identified as follows:

## ARTICLE 2 DATE OF COMMENCEMENT AND SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

§ 2.1 The Contract Time is the number of calendar days available to the Contractor to substantially complete the Work.

### § 2.2 Date of Commencement:

Unless otherwise set forth below, the date of commencement shall be the date of this Agreement.

*(Insert the date of commencement if other than the date of this Agreement.)*

### § 2.3 Substantial Completion:

Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall achieve Substantial Completion, as defined in Section 12.5, of the entire Work:

*(Check the appropriate box and complete the necessary information.)*

☐ Not later than ( ) calendar days from the date of commencement.

☒ By the following date: September 1, 2020

## ARTICLE 3 CONTRACT SUM

§ 3.1 The Contract Sum shall include all items and services necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work. Subject to additions and deductions in accordance with Article 10, the Contract Sum is:

(\$ )

§ 3.2 For purposes of payment, the Contract Sum includes the following values related to portions of the Work:

*(Itemize the Contract Sum among the major portions of the Work.)*

Portion of the Work

Value

§ 3.3 The Contract Sum is based upon the following alternates, if any, which are described in the Contract Documents and hereby accepted by the Owner:

*(Identify the accepted alternates. If the bidding or proposal documents permit the Owner to accept other alternates subsequent to the execution of this Agreement, attach a schedule of such other alternates showing the amount for each and the date when that amount expires.)*

§ 3.4 Allowances, if any, included in the Contract Sum are as follows:

*(Identify each allowance.)*

Item

Price

§ 3.5 Unit prices, if any, are as follows:

*(Identify the item and state the unit price and quantity limitations, if any, to which the unit price will be applicable.)*

Init.



Item

Units and Limitations

Price per Unit (\$0.00)

**ARTICLE 4 PAYMENTS**

§ 4.1 Based on Contractor's Applications for Payment certified by the Architect, the Owner shall pay the Contractor, in accordance with Article 12, as follows:

*(Insert below timing for payments and provisions for withholding retainage, if any.)*

§ 4.2 Payments due and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest from the date payment is due at the rate below, or in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing at the place of the Project.

*(Insert rate of interest agreed upon, if any.)*

1.5 % per month

**ARTICLE 5 INSURANCE**

§ 5.1 The Contractor shall maintain the following types and limits of insurance until the expiration of the period for correction of Work as set forth in Section 14.2, subject to the terms and conditions set forth in this Section 5.1:

§ 5.1.1 Commercial General Liability insurance for the Project, written on an occurrence form, with policy limits of not less than One Million Dollars (\$ 1,000,000.00 ) each occurrence, Two Million Dollars (\$ 2,000,000.00 ) general aggregate, and Two Million Dollars (\$ 2,000,000.00 ) aggregate for products-completed operations hazard.

§ 5.1.2 Automobile Liability covering vehicles owned, and non-owned vehicles used, by the Contractor, with policy limits of not less than One Million Dollars (\$ 1,000,000.00 ) per accident, for bodily injury, death of any person, and property damage arising out of the ownership, maintenance, and use of those motor vehicles along with any other statutorily required automobile coverage.

§ 5.1.3 The Contractor may achieve the required limits and coverage for Commercial General Liability and Automobile Liability through a combination of primary and excess or umbrella liability insurance, provided that such primary and excess or umbrella insurance policies result in the same or greater coverage as those required under Section 5.1.1 and 5.1.2, and in no event shall any excess or umbrella liability insurance provide narrower coverage than the primary policy. The excess policy shall not require exhaustion of the underlying limits only through the actual payment by the underlying insurers.

§ 5.1.4 Workers' Compensation at statutory limits.

§ 5.1.5 Employers' Liability with policy limits not less than Five Hundred Thousand Dollars (\$ 500,000.00 ) each accident, Five Hundred Thousand Dollars (\$ 500,000.00 ) each employee, and Five Hundred Thousand Dollars (\$ 500,000.00 ) policy limit.

§ 5.1.6 The Contractor shall provide builder's risk insurance to cover the total value of the entire Project on a replacement cost basis.

**§ 5.1.7 Other Insurance Provided by the Contractor**

*(List below any other insurance coverage to be provided by the Contractor and any applicable limits.)*

**Coverage**

Owner's Protective Liability Insurance  
Umbrella Insurance

**Limits**

One Million Dollars (\$1,000,000.00) and shall name the owner as the insured and shall also include the Architect as additional insured.  
One Million Dollars (\$1,000,000.00)

§ 5.2 The Owner shall be responsible for purchasing and maintaining the Owner's usual liability insurance and shall provide property insurance to cover the value of the Owner's property. The Contractor is entitled to receive an

increase in the Contract Sum equal to the insurance proceeds related to a loss for damage to the Work covered by the Owner's property insurance.

**§ 5.3** The Contractor shall obtain an endorsement to its Commercial General Liability insurance policy to provide coverage for the Contractor's obligations under Section 8.12.

**§ 5.4** Prior to commencement of the Work, each party shall provide certificates of insurance showing their respective coverages.

**§ 5.5** Unless specifically precluded by the Owner's property insurance policy, the Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, suppliers, agents, and employees, each of the other; and (2) the Architect, Architect's consultants, and any of their agents and employees, for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss to the extent those losses are covered by property insurance or other insurance applicable to the Project, except such rights as they have to the proceeds of such insurance.

## **ARTICLE 6 GENERAL PROVISIONS**

### **§ 6.1 The Contract**

The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties and supersedes prior negotiations, representations or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a written modification in accordance with Article 10.

### **§ 6.2 The Work**

The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment, and services provided, or to be provided, by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations.

### **§ 6.3 Intent**

The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all.

### **§ 6.4 Ownership and Use of Architect's Drawings, Specifications and Other Documents**

Documents prepared by the Architect are instruments of the Architect's service for use solely with respect to this Project. The Architect shall retain all common law, statutory, and other reserved rights, including the copyright. The Contractor, subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, and suppliers are authorized to use and reproduce the instruments of service solely and exclusively for execution of the Work. The instruments of service may not be used for other Projects or for additions to this Project outside the scope of the Work without the specific written consent of the Architect.

### **§ 6.5 Electronic Notice**

Written notice under this Agreement may be given by one party to the other by email as set forth below.  
*(Insert requirements for delivering written notice by email such as name, title, and email address of the recipient, and whether and how the system will be required to generate a read receipt for the transmission.)*

Matt Klaska, Superintendent, mklaska@vit.org

## **ARTICLE 7 OWNER**

### **§ 7.1 Information and Services Required of the Owner**

**§ 7.1.1** If requested by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish all necessary surveys and a legal description of the site.

**§ 7.1.2** Except for permits and fees under Section 8.7.1 that are the responsibility of the Contractor, the Owner shall obtain and pay for other necessary approvals, easements, assessments, and charges.

**§ 7.1.3** Prior to commencement of the Work, at the written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations

under the Contract. The Contractor shall have no obligation to commence the Work until the Owner provides such evidence.

#### **§ 7.2 Owner's Right to Stop the Work**

If the Contractor fails to correct Work which is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may direct the Contractor in writing to stop the Work until the correction is made.

#### **§ 7.3 Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work**

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a seven day period after receipt of written notice from the Owner to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies, correct such deficiencies. In such case, the Architect may withhold or nullify a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to reimburse the Owner for the cost of correction, provided the actions of the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor were approved by the Architect.

#### **§ 7.4 Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts**

**§ 7.4.1** The Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and to award separate contracts in connection with other portions of the Project.

**§ 7.4.2** The Contractor shall coordinate and cooperate with the Owner's own forces and separate contractors employed by the Owner.

### **ARTICLE 8 CONTRACTOR**

#### **§ 8.1 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor**

**§ 8.1.1** Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 8.1.2** The Contractor shall carefully study and compare the Contract Documents with each other and with information furnished by the Owner. Before commencing activities, the Contractor shall (1) take field measurements and verify field conditions; (2) carefully compare this and other information known to the Contractor with the Contract Documents; and (3) promptly report errors, inconsistencies, or omissions discovered to the Architect.

#### **§ 8.2 Contractor's Construction Schedule**

The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract, shall prepare and submit for the Owner's and Architect's information a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work.

#### **§ 8.3 Supervision and Construction Procedures**

**§ 8.3.1** The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for and have control over construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures, and for coordinating all portions of the Work.

**§ 8.3.2** The Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall furnish in writing to the Owner, through the Architect, the names of subcontractors or suppliers for each portion of the Work. The Contractor shall not contract with any subcontractor or supplier to whom the Owner or Architect have made a timely and reasonable objection.

#### **§ 8.4 Labor and Materials**

**§ 8.4.1** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, equipment, tools, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work.

**§ 8.4.2** The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Contract Work. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not skilled in tasks assigned to them.

### **§ 8.5 Warranty**

The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that: (1) materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be new and of good quality unless otherwise required or permitted by the Contract Documents; (2) the Work will be free from defects not inherent in the quality required or permitted; and (3) the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents. Any material or equipment warranties required by the Contract Documents shall be issued in the name of the Owner, or shall be transferable to the Owner, and shall commence in accordance with Section 12.5.

### **§ 8.6 Taxes**

The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use, and similar taxes that are legally required when the Contract is executed.

### **§ 8.7 Permits, Fees and Notices**

**§ 8.7.1** The Contractor shall obtain and pay for the building permit and other permits and governmental fees, licenses, and inspections necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work.

**§ 8.7.2** The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by agencies having jurisdiction over the Work. If the Contractor performs Work knowing it to be contrary to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, the Contractor shall assume full responsibility for such Work and shall bear the attributable costs. The Contractor shall promptly notify the Architect in writing of any known inconsistencies in the Contract Documents with such governmental laws, rules, and regulations.

### **§ 8.8 Submittals**

The Contractor shall promptly review, approve in writing, and submit to the Architect shop drawings, product data, samples, and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents. Shop drawings, product data, samples, and similar submittals are not Contract Documents.

### **§ 8.9 Use of Site**

The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by law, ordinances, permits, the Contract Documents, and the Owner.

### **§ 8.10 Cutting and Patching**

The Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, fitting, or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly.

### **§ 8.11 Cleaning Up**

The Contractor shall keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of debris and trash related to the Work. At the completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove its tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material; and shall properly dispose of waste materials.

### **§ 8.12 Indemnification**

To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them, from and against claims, damages, losses and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), but only to the extent caused by the negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of whether or not such claim, damage, loss or expense is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder.

## **ARTICLE 9 ARCHITECT**

**§ 9.1** The Architect will provide administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents. The Architect will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.2** The Architect will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of construction to become generally familiar with the progress and quality of the Work.

§ 9.3 The Architect will not have control over or charge of, and will not be responsible for, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, or for safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's responsibility. The Architect will not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.4 Based on the Architect's observations and evaluations of the Contractor's Applications for Payment, the Architect will review and certify the amounts due the Contractor.

§ 9.5 The Architect has authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents.

§ 9.6 The Architect will promptly review and approve or take appropriate action upon Contractor's submittals, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.

§ 9.7 On written request from either the Owner or Contractor, the Architect will promptly interpret and decide matters concerning performance under, and requirements of, the Contract Documents.

§ 9.8 Interpretations and decisions of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of, and reasonably inferable from the Contract Documents, and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations and decisions, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor, will not show partiality to either and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

§ 9.9 The Architect's duties, responsibilities, and limits of authority as described in the Contract Documents shall not be changed without written consent of the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld.

#### **ARTICLE 10 CHANGES IN THE WORK**

§ 10.1 The Owner, without invalidating the Contract, may order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract, consisting of additions, deletions or other revisions, and the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted accordingly, in writing. If the Owner and Contractor cannot agree to a change in the Contract Sum, the Owner shall pay the Contractor its actual cost plus reasonable overhead and profit.

§ 10.2 The Architect may authorize or order minor changes in the Work that are consistent with the intent of the Contract Documents and do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Sum or an extension of the Contract Time. Such authorization or order shall be in writing and shall be binding on the Owner and Contractor. The Contractor shall proceed with such minor changes promptly.

§ 10.3 If concealed or unknown physical conditions are encountered at the site that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or from those conditions ordinarily found to exist, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be subject to equitable adjustment.

#### **ARTICLE 11 TIME**

§ 11.1 Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract.

§ 11.2 If the Contractor is delayed at any time in progress of the Work by changes ordered in the Work, or by labor disputes, fire, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties, or other causes beyond the Contractor's control, the Contract Time shall be subject to equitable adjustment.

§ 11.3 Costs caused by delays or by improperly timed activities or defective construction shall be borne by the responsible party.

#### **ARTICLE 12 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION**

##### **§ 12.1 Contract Sum**

The Contract Sum stated in this Agreement, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

## **§ 12.2 Applications for Payment**

**§ 12.2.1** At least ten days before the date established for each progress payment, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an itemized Application for Payment for Work completed in accordance with the values stated in this Agreement. The Application shall be supported by data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment as the Owner or Architect may reasonably require, such as evidence of payments made to, and waivers of liens from, subcontractors and suppliers. Payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment stored, and protected from damage, off the site at a location agreed upon in writing.

**§ 12.2.2** The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment, all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests, or other encumbrances adverse to the Owner's interests.

## **§ 12.3 Certificates for Payment**

The Architect will, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, either (1) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment in the full amount of the Application for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor; (2) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due, and notify the Contractor and Owner in writing of the Architect's reasons for withholding certification in part; or (3) withhold certification of the entire Application for Payment, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reason for withholding certification in whole. If certification or notification is not made within such seven day period, the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' written notice to the Owner and Architect, stop the Work until payment of the amount owing has been received. The Contract Time and the Contract Sum shall be equitably adjusted due to the delay.

## **§ 12.4 Progress Payments**

**§ 12.4.1** After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment in the manner provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 12.4.2** The Contractor shall promptly pay each subcontractor and supplier, upon receipt of payment from the Owner, an amount determined in accordance with the terms of the applicable subcontracts and purchase orders.

**§ 12.4.3** Neither the Owner nor the Architect shall have responsibility for payments to a subcontractor or supplier.

**§ 12.4.4** A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

## **§ 12.5 Substantial Completion**

**§ 12.5.1** Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use.

**§ 12.5.2** When the Contractor believes that the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete, it will notify the Architect and the Architect will make an inspection to determine whether the Work is substantially complete. When the Architect determines that the Work is substantially complete, the Architect shall prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion, establish the responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor, and fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

## **§ 12.6 Final Completion and Final Payment**

**§ 12.6.1** Upon receipt of a final Application for Payment, the Architect will inspect the Work. When the Architect finds the Work acceptable and the Contract fully performed, the Architect will promptly issue a final Certificate for Payment.

**§ 12.6.2** Final payment shall not become due until the Contractor submits to the Architect releases and waivers of liens, and data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts, claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract.

**§ 12.6.3** Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, a subcontractor or supplier shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously made in writing and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

#### **ARTICLE 13 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**

The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining and supervising all safety precautions and programs, including all those required by law in connection with performance of the Contract. The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions to prevent damage, injury, or loss to employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby, the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, and other property at the site or adjacent thereto. The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss to property caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, or by anyone for whose acts the Contractor may be liable.

#### **ARTICLE 14 CORRECTION OF WORK**

**§ 14.1** The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Architect as failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting such rejected Work, including the costs of uncovering, replacement, and additional testing.

**§ 14.2** In addition to the Contractor's other obligations including warranties under the Contract, the Contractor shall, for a period of one year after Substantial Completion, correct work not conforming to the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 14.3** If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time, the Owner may correct it in accordance with Section 7.3.

#### **ARTICLE 15 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

##### **§ 15.1 Assignment of Contract**

Neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the other.

##### **§ 15.2 Tests and Inspections**

**§ 15.2.1** At the appropriate times, the Contractor shall arrange and bear cost of tests, inspections, and approvals of portions of the Work required by the Contract Documents or by laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities.

**§ 15.2.2** If the Architect requires additional testing, the Contractor shall perform those tests.

**§ 15.2.3** The Owner shall bear cost of tests, inspections, or approvals that do not become requirements until after the Contract is executed. The Owner shall directly arrange and pay for tests, inspections, or approvals where building codes or applicable laws or regulations so require.

##### **§ 15.3 Governing Law**

The Contract shall be governed by the law of the place where the Project is located, excluding that jurisdiction's choice of law rules.

#### **ARTICLE 16 TERMINATION OF THE CONTRACT**

##### **§ 16.1 Termination by the Contractor**

If the Work is stopped under Section 12.3 for a period of 14 days through no fault of the Contractor, the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' written notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed including reasonable overhead and profit, and costs incurred by reason of such termination.

##### **§ 16.2 Termination by the Owner for Cause**

**§ 16.2.1** The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor

- .1 repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;
- .2 fails to make payment to subcontractors for materials or labor in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the subcontractors;
- .3 repeatedly disregards applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of a public authority; or
- .4 is otherwise guilty of substantial breach of a provision of the Contract Documents.

§ 16.2.2 When any of the above reasons exist, the Owner, after consultation with the Architect, may without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days' written notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may

- .1 take possession of the site and of all materials thereon owned by the Contractor, and
- .2 finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient.

§ 16.2.3 When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Section 16.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is finished.

§ 16.2.4 If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds costs of finishing the Work, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor. If such costs exceed the unpaid balance, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. This obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

### § 16.3 Termination by the Owner for Convenience

The Owner may, at any time, terminate the Contract for the Owner's convenience and without cause. The Contractor shall be entitled to receive payment for Work executed, and costs incurred by reason of such termination, along with reasonable overhead and profit on the Work not executed.

## ARTICLE 17 OTHER TERMS AND CONDITIONS

*(Insert any other terms or conditions below.)*

This Agreement entered into as of the day and year first written above.

*(If required by law, insert cancellation period, disclosures or other warning statements above the signatures.)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
**OWNER** *(Signature)*

Matt Klaska, Superintendent

\_\_\_\_\_  
*(Printed name and title)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
**CONTRACTOR** *(Signature)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*(Printed name and title)*

LICENSE NO.:

JURISDICTION:



# Additions and Deletions Report for AIA® Document A105™ – 2017

This Additions and Deletions Report, as defined on page 1 of the associated document, reproduces below all text the author has added to the standard form AIA document in order to complete it, as well as any text the author may have added to or deleted from the original AIA text. Added text is shown underlined. Deleted text is indicated with a horizontal line through the original AIA text.

Note: This Additions and Deletions Report is provided for information purposes only and is not incorporated into or constitute any part of the associated AIA document. This Additions and Deletions Report and its associated document were generated simultaneously by AIA software at 12:33:06 ET on 03/19/2020.

## PAGE 1

V.I.T CUSD #2  
1502 East US Highway 136  
Table Grove, IL 61482

...

Health Life Safety Work: Building Addition  
1502 East US Highway 136  
Table Grove, IL 61482

...

Architechnics, Inc.  
510 Maine Street  
Quincy, IL 62301

## PAGE 2

- .2 the drawings and specifications prepared by the Architect, dated March 20, 2020, and enumerated as follows:

...

<u>Full Set</u>	<u>Health Life Safety</u> <u>Work:Building Addition</u>	<u>March 20, 2020</u>
-----------------	--	-----------------------

...

<u>Full Document</u>	<u>Health Life Safety Work:</u> <u>Building Addition</u>	<u>All</u>
----------------------	---	------------

## PAGE 3

TBD

...

[ X ] By the following date: September 1, 2020

PAGE 4

1.5 % per month

...

§ 5.1.1 Commercial General Liability insurance for the Project, written on an occurrence form, with policy limits of not less than One Million Dollars (\$ 1,000,000.00 ) each occurrence, Two Million Dollars (\$ 2,000,000.00 ) general aggregate, and Two Million Dollars (\$ 2,000,000.00 ) aggregate for products-completed operations hazard.

...

§ 5.1.2 Automobile Liability covering vehicles owned, and non-owned vehicles used, by the Contractor, with policy limits of not less than One Million Dollars (\$ 1,000,000.00 ) per accident, for bodily injury, death of any person, and property damage arising out of the ownership, maintenance, and use of those motor vehicles along with any other statutorily required automobile coverage.

...

§ 5.1.5 Employers' Liability with policy limits not less than Five Hundred Thousand Dollars (\$ 500,000.00 ) each accident, Five Hundred Thousand Dollars (\$ 500,000.00 ) each employee, and Five Hundred Thousand Dollars (\$ 500,000.00 ) policy limit.

...

Owner's Protective Liability Insurance  
Umbrella Insurance

One Million Dollars (\$1,000,000.00) and shall name the owner as the insured and shall also include the Architect as additional insured.  
One Million Dollars (\$1,000,000.00)

PAGE 5

Matt Klaska, Superintendent, mklaska@vit.org

PAGE 11

Matt Klaska, Superintendent

## **Certification of Document's Authenticity**

**AIA® Document D401™ – 2003**

I, Todd J. Moore, hereby certify, to the best of my knowledge, information and belief, that I created the attached final document simultaneously with its associated Additions and Deletions Report and this certification at 12:33:06 ET on 03/19/2020 under Order No. 6184970010 from AIA Contract Documents software and that in preparing the attached final document I made no changes to the original text of AIA® Document A105™ - 2017, Standard Short Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor, as published by the AIA in its software, other than those additions and deletions shown in the associated Additions and Deletions Report.

(Signed)



(Title)

PRESIDENT

(Dated)

03/19/20

**SECTION 00 6113  
PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BOND**

KNOW ALL BY THESE PRESENTS:

That we \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_  
hereinafter called PRINCIPAL, and \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ hereinafter called the SURETY,

are held and firmly bound unto **V.I.T. Community Unit School District #2**, hereinafter called OWNER,  
and unto all persons, firms, and corporations who may furnish materials for, or perform labor on the  
**Health Life Safety Work: Building Addition** dated **March 20, 2020**.

hereinafter referred to, in the penal sum of \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ DOLLARS \_\_\_\_\_ CENTS (\$ \_\_\_\_\_)  
in lawful money of the United States, for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind  
ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators and successors, jointly and severally firmly by these  
presents.

THE CONDITION OF THIS OBLIGATION IS SUCH, that whereas the Principal entered into a certain  
contract, dated \_\_\_\_\_ 20 \_\_ with **V.I.T. COMMUNITY UNIT SCHOOL DISTRICT #2**, the OWNER,  
a copy of which is attached and hereby is referred to and made a part hereof, as if written herein at length,  
and whereby the said Principal has promised and agreed to perform said work in accordance with the  
terms of said contract, and has promised to pay all sums of money due for labor, materials, apparatus,  
fixtures, or machinery furnished to such Principal for the purpose of performing such work and has further  
agreed to pay all direct and indirect damages to any person, firm, company, or corporation suffered or  
sustained on account of the performance of such work during the time thereof and until such work is  
completed and accepted, and has further agreed that this bond shall inure to the benefit of any person,  
firm, company or corporation, to whom any money may be due from the Principal, subcontractor or  
otherwise, for any such labor, materials, apparatus, fixtures or machinery so furnished and that suit may  
be maintained on such bond by any such person, firm, company, or corporation, for the recovery of any  
such money.

NOW THEREFORE, if the said Principal shall well and truly perform said work in accordance with the  
terms of said contract, and shall pay all sums of money due or to become due for any labor, materials,  
apparatus, fixtures or machinery furnished to him for the purpose of constructing such work, and shall  
commence and complete the work within the time prescribed in said contract, and shall pay and discharge  
all damages, direct and indirect, that may be suffered or sustained on account of said work during the time  
of the performance thereof and until the said work shall have been accepted, and shall hold the aforesaid  
Owner and its or his agents harmless on account of any such damages, and shall in all respects fully and  
faithfully comply with all the provisions, conditions, and requirements of said contract, then this obligation  
to be void; otherwise to remain in full force and effect.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, this instrument is executed this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ A.D. 20\_\_.

In the presence of: \_\_\_\_\_

Principal

(Address)

By: \_\_\_\_\_

ATTEST: \_\_\_\_\_

SURETY: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Attorney-in-Fact

ATTEST: \_\_\_\_\_

STATE OF \_\_\_\_\_

COUNTY OF \_\_\_\_\_

On this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ 20\_\_ before me personally appeared

\_\_\_\_\_ Principal, and

\_\_\_\_\_ Surety,

all personally known to me to be the persons described in and who executed the above bond, and severally and individually acknowledged to me that they executed the same.

Given under my hand and notary seal, this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ A.D., 20\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public

My commission expires \_\_\_\_\_

NOTE: DATE OF BOND MUST NOT BE PRIOR TO DATE OF CONTRACT

**END OF SECTION 00 6113**

# **AIA** Document A201™ – 2017

## **General Conditions of the Contract for Construction**

### **for the following PROJECT:**

*(Name and location or address)*

Health Life Safety Work: Building Addition  
1502 East US Highway 136  
Table Grove, IL 61482

### **THE OWNER:**

*(Name, legal status and address)*

V.I.T CUSD #2  
1502 East US Highway 136  
Table Grove, IL 61482

### **THE ARCHITECT:**

*(Name, legal status and address)*

Architechnics, Inc.  
510 Maine Street  
Quincy, IL 62301

### **TABLE OF ARTICLES**

- 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS**
- 2 OWNER**
- 3 CONTRACTOR**
- 4 ARCHITECT**
- 5 SUBCONTRACTORS**
- 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**
- 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK**
- 8 TIME**
- 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION**
- 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**
- 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS**
- 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK**
- 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**
- 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT**

### **ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

For guidance in modifying this document to include supplementary conditions, see AIA Document A503™, Guide for Supplementary Conditions.

Init.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. All rights reserved. **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This document was produced by AIA software at 12:32:10 ET on 03/19/2020 under Order No. 6184970010 which expires on 11/08/2020, and is not for resale.

User Notes:

(3B9ADA34)

## 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

Init.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. All rights reserved. **WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This document was produced by AIA software at 12:32:10 ET on 03/19/2020 under Order No. 6184970010 which expires on 11/08/2020, and is not for resale.

User Notes:

(3B9ADA34)

## INDEX

(Topics and numbers in bold are Section headings.)

### Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

9.6.6, 9.9.3, 12.3

### Acceptance of Work

9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.3

### Access to Work

3.16, 6.2.1, 12.1

### Accident Prevention

10

### Acts and Omissions

3.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.8, 3.18, 4.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 10.2.5, 10.2.8, 13.3.2, 14.1, 15.1.2, 15.2

### Addenda

1.1.1

### Additional Costs, Claims for

3.7.4, 3.7.5, 10.3.2, 15.1.5

### Additional Inspections and Testing

9.4.2, 9.8.3, 12.2.1, 13.4

### Additional Time, Claims for

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 8.3.2, 15.1.6

### Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, 4.2, 9.4, 9.5

### Advertisement or Invitation to Bid

1.1.1

### Aesthetic Effect

4.2.13

### Allowances

3.8

### Applications for Payment

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.5.4, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.10

### Approvals

2.1.1, 2.3.1, 2.5, 3.1.3, 3.10.2, 3.12.8, 3.12.9,

3.12.10.1, 4.2.7, 9.3.2, 13.4.1

### Arbitration

8.3.1, 15.3.2, 15.4

### ARCHITECT

4

### Architect, Definition of

4.1.1

### Architect, Extent of Authority

2.5, 3.12.7, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.3, 7.1.2, 7.3.4, 7.4, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.8, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.1, 12.2.1, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.4, 15.2.1

### Architect, Limitations of Authority and Responsibility

2.1.1, 3.12.4, 3.12.8, 3.12.10, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.10, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 5.2.1, 7.4, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6.4, 15.1.4, 15.2

### Architect's Additional Services and Expenses

2.5, 12.2.1, 13.4.2, 13.4.3, 14.2.4

### Architect's Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, 3.7.4, 15.2, 9.4.1, 9.5

### Architect's Approvals

2.5, 3.1.3, 3.5, 3.10.2, 4.2.7

### Architect's Authority to Reject Work

3.5, 4.2.6, 12.1.2, 12.2.1

### Architect's Copyright

1.1.7, 1.5

### Architect's Decisions

3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 4.2.14, 6.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2, 15.2

### Architect's Inspections

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

### Architect's Instructions

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 13.4.2

### Architect's Interpretations

4.2.11, 4.2.12

### Architect's Project Representative

4.2.10

### Architect's Relationship with Contractor

1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.9.3, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.3.2, 13.4, 15.2

### Architect's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.1.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 11.3

### Architect's Representations

9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1

### Architect's Site Visits

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

### Asbestos

10.3.1

### Attorneys' Fees

3.18.1, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3

### Award of Separate Contracts

6.1.1, 6.1.2

### Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

5.2

### Basic Definitions

1.1

### Bidding Requirements

1.1.1

### Binding Dispute Resolution

8.3.1, 9.7, 11.5, 13.1, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6.1, 15.3.1, 15.3.2, 15.3.3, 15.4.1

### Bonds, Lien

7.3.4.4, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

### Bonds, Performance, and Payment

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, 11.1.2, 11.1.3, 11.5

### Building Information Models Use and Reliance

1.8

### Building Permit

3.7.1

### Capitalization

1.3

### Certificate of Substantial Completion

9.8.3, 9.8.4, 9.8.5



Certificates for Payment  
 4.2.1, 4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7,  
 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.4  
 Certificates of Inspection, Testing or Approval  
 13.4.4  
 Certificates of Insurance  
 9.10.2  
 Change Orders  
 1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.8.2.3, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 5.2.3,  
 7.1.2, 7.1.3, 7.2, 7.3.2, 7.3.7, 7.3.9, 7.3.10, 8.3.1,  
 9.3.1.1, 9.10.3, 10.3.2, 11.2, 11.5, 12.1.2  
 Change Orders, Definition of  
 7.2.1  
 CHANGES IN THE WORK  
 2.2.2, 3.11, 4.2.8, 7, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1,  
 11.5  
 Claims, Definition of  
 15.1.1  
 Claims, Notice of  
 1.6.2, 15.1.3  
 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES  
 3.2.4, 6.1.1, 6.3, 7.3.9, 9.3.3, 9.10.4, 10.3.3, 15, 15.4  
 Claims and Timely Assertion of Claims  
 15.4.1  
 Claims for Additional Cost  
 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 7.3.9, 9.5.2, 10.2.5, 10.3.2, 15.1.5  
 Claims for Additional Time  
 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 6.1.1, 8.3.2, 9.5.2, 10.3.2, 15.1.6  
 Concealed or Unknown Conditions, Claims for  
 3.7.4  
 Claims for Damages  
 3.2.4, 3.18, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.2.5, 10.3.3, 11.3,  
 11.3.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.7  
 Claims Subject to Arbitration  
 15.4.1  
 Cleaning Up  
 3.15, 6.3  
 Commencement of the Work, Conditions Relating to  
 2.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12.6, 5.2.1, 5.2.3,  
 6.2.2, 8.1.2, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 11.1, 11.2, 15.1.5  
 Commencement of the Work, Definition of  
 8.1.2  
 Communications  
 3.9.1, 4.2.4  
 Completion, Conditions Relating to  
 3.4.1, 3.11, 3.15, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 8.2, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1,  
 9.10, 12.2, 14.1.2, 15.1.2  
 COMPLETION, PAYMENTS AND  
 9  
 Completion, Substantial  
 3.10.1, 4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1,  
 9.10.3, 12.2, 15.1.2  
 Compliance with Laws  
 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 10.2.2,  
 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14.1.1, 14.2.1.3,  
 15.2.8, 15.4.2, 15.4.3  
 Concealed or Unknown Conditions  
 3.7.4, 4.2.8, 8.3.1, 10.3  
 Conditions of the Contract  
 1.1.1, 6.1.1, 6.1.4  
 Consent, Written  
 3.4.2, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 13.2,  
 15.4.4.2  
 Consolidation or Joinder  
 15.4.4  
 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY  
 SEPARATE CONTRACTORS  
 1.1.4, 6  
 Construction Change Directive, Definition of  
 7.3.1  
 Construction Change Directives  
 1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1.1, 7.1.2, 7.1.3,  
 7.3, 9.3.1.1  
 Construction Schedules, Contractor's  
 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2  
 Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts  
 5.4, 14.2.2.2  
 Continuing Contract Performance  
 15.1.4  
 Contract, Definition of  
 1.1.2  
 CONTRACT, TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION  
 OF THE  
 5.4.1.1, 5.4.2, 11.5, 14  
 Contract Administration  
 3.1.3, 4, 9.4, 9.5  
 Contract Award and Execution, Conditions Relating  
 to  
 3.7.1, 3.10, 5.2, 6.1  
 Contract Documents, Copies Furnished and Use of  
 1.5.2, 2.3.6, 5.3  
 Contract Documents, Definition of  
 1.1.1  
 Contract Sum  
 2.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.8, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 7.3, 7.4,  
 9.1, 9.2, 9.4.2, 9.5.1.4, 9.6.7, 9.7, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.1.2,  
 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, 15.1.5, 15.2.5  
 Contract Sum, Definition of  
 9.1  
 Contract Time  
 1.1.4, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 6.1.5,  
 7.2.1.3, 7.3.1, 7.3.5, 7.3.6, 7, 7, 7.3.10, 7.4, 8.1.1,  
 8.2.1, 8.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 12.1.1, 12.1.2,  
 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, 15.1.6.1, 15.2.5  
 Contract Time, Definition of  
 8.1.1  
 CONTRACTOR  
 3  
**Contractor**, Definition of  
 3.1, 6.1.2  
 Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules  
 3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 4.2.3, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2  
 Contractor's Employees

Init.

2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6,  
10.2, 10.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1  
Contractor's Liability Insurance  
11.1  
Contractor's Relationship with Separate Contractors  
and Owner's Forces  
3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 6, 11.3, 12.2.4  
Contractor's Relationship with Subcontractors  
1.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.18.1, 3.18.2, 4.2.4, 5, 9.6.2,  
9.6.7, 9.10.2, 11.2, 11.3, 11.4  
Contractor's Relationship with the Architect  
1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2,  
3.5.1, 3.7.4, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.2, 5.2,  
6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6,  
10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.4, 15.1.3, 15.2.1  
Contractor's Representations  
3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.6, 6.2.2, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.8.2  
Contractor's Responsibility for Those Performing the  
Work  
3.3.2, 3.18, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 9.5.1, 10.2.8  
Contractor's Review of Contract Documents  
3.2  
Contractor's Right to Stop the Work  
2.2.2, 9.7  
Contractor's Right to Terminate the Contract  
14.1  
Contractor's Submittals  
3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8.2,  
9.8.3, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3  
Contractor's Superintendent  
3.9, 10.2.6  
Contractor's Supervision and Construction  
Procedures  
1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4,  
7.1.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.6, 8.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4  
Coordination and Correlation  
1.2, 3.2.1, 3.3.1, 3.10, 3.12.6, 6.1.3, 6.2.1  
Copies Furnished of Drawings and Specifications  
1.5, 2.3.6, 3.11  
Copyrights  
1.5, 3.17  
Correction of Work  
2.5, 3.7.3, 9.4.2, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 12.1.2, 12.2, 12.3,  
15.1.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1  
Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents  
1.2  
Cost, Definition of  
7.3.4  
Costs  
2.5, 3.2.4, 3.7.3, 3.8.2, 3.15.2, 5.4.2, 6.1.1, 6.2.3,  
7.3.3.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.8, 7.3.9, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 10.3.6,  
11.2, 12.1.2, 12.2.1, 12.2.4, 13.4, 14  
Cutting and Patching  
3.14, 6.2.5  
Damage to Construction of Owner or Separate  
Contractors  
3.14.2, 6.2.4, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4

Damage to the Work  
3.14.2, 9.9.1, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4  
Damages, Claims for  
3.2.4, 3.18, 6.1.1, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.3.3, 11.3.2,  
11.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.7  
Damages for Delay  
6.2.3, 8.3.3, 9.5.1.6, 9.7, 10.3.2, 14.3.2  
Date of Commencement of the Work, Definition of  
8.1.2  
Date of Substantial Completion, Definition of  
8.1.3  
Day, Definition of  
8.1.4  
Decisions of the Architect  
3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 6.3, 7.3.4,  
7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2,  
14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1, 15.2  
Decisions to Withhold Certification  
9.4.1, 9.5, 9.7, 14.1.1.3  
Defective or Nonconforming Work, Acceptance,  
Rejection and Correction of  
2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.3, 9.5.1, 9.5.3, 9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3,  
9.10.4, 12.2.1  
Definitions  
1.1, 2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.5, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 3.12.3, 4.1.1, 5.1,  
6.1.2, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.1, 9.1, 9.8.1, 15.1.1  
Delays and Extensions of Time  
3.2, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7,  
10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.6, 15.2.5  
Digital Data Use and Transmission  
1.7  
Disputes  
6.3, 7.3.9, 15.1, 15.2  
Documents and Samples at the Site  
3.11  
Drawings, Definition of  
1.1.5  
Drawings and Specifications, Use and Ownership of  
3.11  
Effective Date of Insurance  
8.2.2  
Emergencies  
10.4, 14.1.1.2, 15.1.5  
Employees, Contractor's  
3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2,  
10.3.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1  
Equipment, Labor, or Materials  
1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,  
4.2.6, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3,  
9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2  
Execution and Progress of the Work  
1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.2.2, 2.3.4, 2.3.6, 3.1, 3.3.1, 3.4.1, 3.7.1,  
3.10.1, 3.12, 3.14, 4.2, 6.2.2, 7.1.3, 7.3.6, 8.2, 9.5.1,  
9.9.1, 10.2, 10.3, 12.1, 12.2, 14.2, 14.3.1, 15.1.4  
Extensions of Time  
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3, 7.4, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2,  
10.4, 14.3, 15.1.6, 15.2.5

Failure of Payment  
 9.5.1.3, 9.7, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2  
 Faulty Work  
 (See Defective or Nonconforming Work)  
 Final Completion and Final Payment  
 4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.8.2, 9.10, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3  
 Financial Arrangements, Owner's  
 2.2.1, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4  
**GENERAL PROVISIONS**  
**1**  
 Governing Law  
 13.1  
 Guarantees (See Warranty)  
 Hazardous Materials and Substances  
 10.2.4, 10.3  
 Identification of Subcontractors and Suppliers  
 5.2.1  
 Indemnification  
 3.17, 3.18, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3, 11.3  
 Information and Services Required of the Owner  
 2.1.2, 2.2, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10.1, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5,  
 9.6.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2,  
 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4  
 Initial Decision  
 15.2  
 Initial Decision Maker, Definition of  
 1.1.8  
 Initial Decision Maker, Decisions  
 14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5  
 Initial Decision Maker, Extent of Authority  
 14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5  
 Injury or Damage to Person or Property  
 10.2.8, 10.4  
 Inspections  
 3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3,  
 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 12.2.1, 13.4  
 Instructions to Bidders  
 1.1.1  
 Instructions to the Contractor  
 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.8.1, 5.2.1, 7, 8.2.2, 12, 13.4.2  
 Instruments of Service, Definition of  
 1.1.7  
 Insurance  
 6.1.1, 7.3.4, 8.2.2, 9.3.2, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.2.5,  
 11  
**Insurance, Notice of Cancellation or Expiration**  
**11.1.4, 11.2.3**  
 Insurance, Contractor's Liability  
 11.1  
 Insurance, Effective Date of  
 8.2.2, 14.4.2  
 Insurance, Owner's Liability  
 11.2  
 Insurance, Property  
 10.2.5, 11.2, 11.4, 11.5  
 Insurance, Stored Materials  
 9.3.2

**INSURANCE AND BONDS**  
**11**  
 Insurance Companies, Consent to Partial Occupancy  
 9.9.1  
 Insured loss, Adjustment and Settlement of  
 11.5  
 Intent of the Contract Documents  
 1.2.1, 4.2.7, 4.2.12, 4.2.13  
 Interest  
 13.5  
 Interpretation  
 1.1.8, 1.2.3, 1.4, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 15.1.1  
 Interpretations, Written  
 4.2.11, 4.2.12  
 Judgment on Final Award  
 15.4.2  
 Labor and Materials, Equipment  
 1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,  
 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1,  
 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2  
 Labor Disputes  
 8.3.1  
 Laws and Regulations  
 1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4,  
 9.9.1, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8,  
 15.4  
 Liens  
 2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8  
 Limitations, Statutes of  
 12.2.5, 15.1.2, 15.4.1.1  
 Limitations of Liability  
 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.10, 3.12.10.1, 3.17, 3.18.1, 4.2.6,  
 4.2.7, 6.2.2, 9.4.2, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 9.6.8, 10.2.5, 10.3.3,  
 11.3, 12.2.5, 13.3.1  
 Limitations of Time  
 2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2.7,  
 5.2, 5.3, 5.4.1, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3,  
 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15,  
 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5  
 Materials, Hazardous  
 10.2.4, 10.3  
 Materials, Labor, Equipment and  
 1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4.1, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,  
 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2,  
 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2  
 Means, Methods, Techniques, Sequences and  
 Procedures of Construction  
 3.3.1, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 9.4.2  
 Mechanic's Lien  
 2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8  
 Mediation  
 8.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6, 15.3, 15.4.1,  
 15.4.1.1  
 Minor Changes in the Work  
 1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1, 7.4  
**MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**  
**13**

Init.

Modifications, Definition of  
1.1.1  
Modifications to the Contract  
1.1.1, 1.1.2, 2.5, 3.11, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 5.2.3, 7, 8.3.1, 9.7,  
10.3.2  
Mutual Responsibility  
6.2  
Nonconforming Work, Acceptance of  
9.6.6, 9.9.3, 12.3  
Nonconforming Work, Rejection and Correction of  
2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4,  
12.2  
Notice  
1.6, 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 2.1.2, 2.2.2, 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.5, 3.2.4,  
3.3.1, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.12.9, 3.12.10, 5.2.1, 7.4,  
8.2.2, 9.6.8, 9.7, 9.10.1, 10.2.8, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.2.2.1,  
13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1, 14.2.2, 14.4.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5,  
15.1.6, 15.4.1  
Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Insurance  
11.1.4, 11.2.3  
Notice of Claims  
1.6.2, 2.1.2, 3.7.4, 9.6.8, 10.2.8, 15.1.3, 15.1.5,  
15.1.6, 15.2.8, 15.3.2, 15.4.1  
Notice of Testing and Inspections  
13.4.1, 13.4.2  
Observations, Contractor's  
3.2, 3.7.4  
Occupancy  
2.3.1, 9.6.6, 9.8  
Orders, Written  
1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9.2, 7, 8.2.2, 11.5, 12.1, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.2,  
14.3.1  
OWNER  
2  
Owner, Definition of  
2.1.1  
Owner, Evidence of Financial Arrangements  
2.2, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4  
Owner, Information and Services Required of the  
2.1.2, 2.2, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5,  
9.3.2, 9.6.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1,  
13.4.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4  
Owner's Authority  
1.5, 2.1.1, 2.3.2.4, 2.5, 3.4.2, 3.8.1, 3.12.10, 3.14.2,  
4.1.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.9, 5.2.1, 5.2.4, 5.4.1, 6.1, 6.3, 7.2.1,  
7.3.1, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 9.3.2, 9.5.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2,  
10.3.2, 11.4, 11.5, 12.2.2, 12.3, 13.2.2, 14.3, 14.4,  
15.2.7  
Owner's Insurance  
11.2  
Owner's Relationship with Subcontractors  
1.1.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 9.6.4, 9.10.2, 14.2.2  
Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work  
2.5, 14.2.2  
Owner's Right to Clean Up  
6.3  
Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award

Separate Contracts  
6.1  
Owner's Right to Stop the Work  
2.4  
Owner's Right to Suspend the Work  
14.3  
Owner's Right to Terminate the Contract  
14.2, 14.4  
Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications and  
Other Instruments of Service  
1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.1.7, 1.5, 2.3.6, 3.2.2, 3.11, 3.17, 4.2.12,  
5.3  
Partial Occupancy or Use  
9.6.6, 9.9  
Patching, Cutting and  
3.14, 6.2.5  
Patents  
3.17  
Payment, Applications for  
4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.8.5, 9.10.1,  
14.2.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3  
Payment, Certificates for  
4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1,  
9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4  
Payment, Failure of  
9.5.1.3, 9.7, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2  
Payment, Final  
4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.10, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3  
Payment Bond, Performance Bond and  
7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, 11.1.2  
Payments, Progress  
9.3, 9.6, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4  
PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION  
9  
Payments to Subcontractors  
5.4.2, 9.5.1.3, 9.6.2, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 14.2.1.2  
PCB  
10.3.1  
Performance Bond and Payment Bond  
7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, 11.1.2  
Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws  
2.3.1, 3.7, 3.13, 7.3.4.4, 10.2.2  
PERSONS AND PROPERTY, PROTECTION OF  
10  
Polychlorinated Biphenyl  
10.3.1  
Product Data, Definition of  
3.12.2  
Product Data and Samples, Shop Drawings  
3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7  
Progress and Completion  
4.2.2, 8.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 14.1.4, 15.1.4  
Progress Payments  
9.3, 9.6, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4  
Project, Definition of  
1.1.4  
Project Representatives

Init.

AIA Document A201™ – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017 by The American Institute of Architects. All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. This document was produced by AIA software at 12:32:10 ET on 03/19/2020 under Order No. 6184970010 which expires on 11/08/2020, and is not for resale.

User Notes:

(3B9ADA34)

4.2.10  
 Property Insurance  
 10.2.5, 11.2  
 Proposal Requirements  
 1.1.1  
**PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**  
 10  
 Regulations and Laws  
 1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 9.9.1,  
 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8,  
 15.4  
 Rejection of Work  
 4.2.6, 12.2.1  
 Releases and Waivers of Liens  
 9.3.1, 9.10.2  
 Representations  
 3.2.1, 3.5, 3.12.6, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1  
 Representatives  
 2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.9, 4.1.1, 4.2.10, 13.2.1  
 Responsibility for Those Performing the Work  
 3.3.2, 3.18, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 6.3, 9.5.1, 10  
 Retainage  
 9.3.1, 9.6.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3  
 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions  
 by Contractor  
 3.2, 3.12.7, 6.1.3  
 Review of Contractor's Submittals by Owner and  
 Architect  
 3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2, 5.2, 6.1.3, 9.2, 9.8.2  
 Review of Shop Drawings, Product Data and  
 Samples by Contractor  
 3.12  
 Rights and Remedies  
 1.1.2, 2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.15.2, 4.2.6, 5.3, 5.4, 6.1,  
 6.3, 7.3.1, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.2.5, 10.3, 12.2.1, 12.2.2,  
 12.2.4, 13.3, 14, 15.4  
 Royalties, Patents and Copyrights  
 3.17  
 Rules and Notices for Arbitration  
 15.4.1  
 Safety of Persons and Property  
 10.2, 10.4  
 Safety Precautions and Programs  
 3.3.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 5.3, 10.1, 10.2, 10.4  
 Samples, Definition of  
 3.12.3  
 Samples, Shop Drawings, Product Data and  
 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7  
 Samples at the Site, Documents and  
 3.11  
 Schedule of Values  
 9.2, 9.3.1  
 Schedules, Construction  
 3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2  
 Separate Contracts and Contractors  
 1.1.4, 3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.7, 6, 8.3.1, 12.1.2  
 Separate Contractors, Definition of

6.1.1  
 Shop Drawings, Definition of  
 3.12.1  
 Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples  
 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7  
 Site, Use of  
 3.13, 6.1.1, 6.2.1  
 Site Inspections  
 3.2.2, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 3.7.4, 4.2, 9.9.2, 9.4.2, 9.10.1, 13.4  
 Site Visits, Architect's  
 3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4  
 Special Inspections and Testing  
 4.2.6, 12.2.1, 13.4  
 Specifications, Definition of  
 1.1.6  
 Specifications  
 1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.2.2, 1.5, 3.12.10, 3.17, 4.2.14  
 Statute of Limitations  
 15.1.2, 15.4.1.1  
 Stopping the Work  
 2.2.2, 2.4, 9.7, 10.3, 14.1  
 Stored Materials  
 6.2.1, 9.3.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4  
 Subcontractor, Definition of  
 5.1.1  
**SUBCONTRACTORS**  
 5  
 Subcontractors, Work by  
 1.2.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.1, 3.18, 4.2.3, 5.2.3, 5.3, 5.4,  
 9.3.1.2, 9.6.7  
 Subcontractual Relations  
 5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6, 9.10, 10.2.1, 14.1, 14.2.1  
 Submittals  
 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 7.3.4, 9.2, 9.3,  
 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3  
 Submittal Schedule  
 3.10.2, 3.12.5, 4.2.7  
 Subrogation, Waivers of  
 6.1.1, 11.3  
 Substances, Hazardous  
 10.3  
 Substantial Completion  
 4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.3,  
 12.2, 15.1.2  
 Substantial Completion, Definition of  
 9.8.1  
 Substitution of Subcontractors  
 5.2.3, 5.2.4  
 Substitution of Architect  
 2.3.3  
 Substitutions of Materials  
 3.4.2, 3.5, 7.3.8  
 Sub-subcontractor, Definition of  
 5.1.2  
 Subsurface Conditions  
 3.7.4  
 Successors and Assigns

Init.

13.2  
 Superintendent  
 3.9, 10.2.6  
 Supervision and Construction Procedures  
 1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4,  
 7.1.3, 7.3.4, 8.2, 8.3.1, 9.4.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4  
 Suppliers  
 1.5, 3.12.1, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 5.2.1, 9.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6,  
 9.10.5, 14.2.1  
 Surety  
 5.4.1.2, 9.6.8, 9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.1.2, 14.2.2,  
 15.2.7  
 Surety, Consent of  
 9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3  
 Surveys  
 1.1.7, 2.3.4  
 Suspension by the Owner for Convenience  
 14.3  
 Suspension of the Work  
 3.7.5, 5.4.2, 14.3  
 Suspension or Termination of the Contract  
 5.4.1.1, 14  
 Taxes  
 3.6, 3.8.2.1, 7.3.4.4  
 Termination by the Contractor  
 14.1, 15.1.7  
 Termination by the Owner for Cause  
 5.4.1.1, 14.2, 15.1.7  
 Termination by the Owner for Convenience  
 14.4  
 Termination of the Architect  
 2.3.3  
 Termination of the Contractor Employment  
 14.2.2

## TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

14  
 Tests and Inspections  
 3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3,  
 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 10.3.2, 12.2.1, 13.4  
 TIME  
 8  
 Time, Delays and Extensions of  
 3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7,  
 10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.6, 15.2.5  
 Time Limits

2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2,  
 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3,  
 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14,  
 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.4  
 Time Limits on Claims  
 3.7.4, 10.2.8, 15.1.2, 15.1.3  
 Title to Work  
 9.3.2, 9.3.3  
 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK  
 12  
 Uncovering of Work  
 12.1  
 Unforeseen Conditions, Concealed or Unknown  
 3.7.4, 8.3.1, 10.3  
 Unit Prices  
 7.3.3.2, 9.1.2  
 Use of Documents  
 1.1.1, 1.5, 2.3.6, 3.12.6, 5.3  
 Use of Site  
 3.13, 6.1.1, 6.2.1  
 Values, Schedule of  
 9.2, 9.3.1  
 Waiver of Claims by the Architect  
 13.3.2  
 Waiver of Claims by the Contractor  
 9.10.5, 13.3.2, 15.1.7  
 Waiver of Claims by the Owner  
 9.9.3, 9.10.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.2.1, 13.3.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.7  
 Waiver of Consequential Damages  
 14.2.4, 15.1.7  
 Waiver of Liens  
 9.3, 9.10.2, 9.10.4  
 Waivers of Subrogation  
 6.1.1, 11.3  
 Warranty  
 3.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 12.2.2,  
 15.1.2  
 Weather Delays  
 8.3, 15.1.6.2  
 Work, Definition of  
 1.1.3  
 Written Consent  
 1.5.2, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.12.8, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.3.2, 9.10.3,  
 13.2, 13.3.2, 15.4.4.2  
 Written Interpretations  
 4.2.11, 4.2.12  
 Written Orders  
 1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9, 7, 8.2.2, 12.1, 12.2, 13.4.2, 14.3.1

## **ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS**

### **§ 1.1 Basic Definitions**

#### **§ 1.1.1 The Contract Documents**

The Contract Documents are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract, other documents listed in the Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by both parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive, or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect. Unless specifically enumerated in the Agreement, the Contract Documents do not include the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, the Contractor's bid or proposal, or portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements.

#### **§ 1.1.2 The Contract**

The Contract Documents form the Contract for Construction. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a Modification. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the Contractor and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, (2) between the Owner and a Subcontractor or a Sub-subcontractor, (3) between the Owner and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, or (4) between any persons or entities other than the Owner and the Contractor. The Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the Architect's duties.

#### **§ 1.1.3 The Work**

The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment, and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project.

#### **§ 1.1.4 The Project**

The Project is the total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part and which may include construction by the Owner and by Separate Contractors.

#### **§ 1.1.5 The Drawings**

The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.

#### **§ 1.1.6 The Specifications**

The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

#### **§ 1.1.7 Instruments of Service**

Instruments of Service are representations, in any medium of expression now known or later developed, of the tangible and intangible creative work performed by the Architect and the Architect's consultants under their respective professional services agreements. Instruments of Service may include, without limitation, studies, surveys, models, sketches, drawings, specifications, and other similar materials.

#### **§ 1.1.8 Initial Decision Maker**

The Initial Decision Maker is the person identified in the Agreement to render initial decisions on Claims in accordance with Section 15.2. The Initial Decision Maker shall not show partiality to the Owner or Contractor and shall not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

### **§ 1.2 Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents**

**§ 1.2.1** The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all; performance by the Contractor shall be required only to the extent

consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

**§ 1.2.1.1** The invalidity of any provision of the Contract Documents shall not invalidate the Contract or its remaining provisions. If it is determined that any provision of the Contract Documents violates any law, or is otherwise invalid or unenforceable, then that provision shall be revised to the extent necessary to make that provision legal and enforceable. In such case the Contract Documents shall be construed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, to give effect to the parties' intentions and purposes in executing the Contract.

**§ 1.2.2** Organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles, and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any trade.

**§ 1.2.3** Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

### **§ 1.3 Capitalization**

Terms capitalized in these General Conditions include those that are (1) specifically defined, (2) the titles of numbered articles, or (3) the titles of other documents published by the American Institute of Architects.

### **§ 1.4 Interpretation**

In the interest of brevity the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as "all" and "any" and articles such as "the" and "an," but the fact that a modifier or an article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

### **§ 1.5 Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications, and Other Instruments of Service**

**§ 1.5.1** The Architect and the Architect's consultants shall be deemed the authors and owners of their respective Instruments of Service, including the Drawings and Specifications, and retain all common law, statutory, and other reserved rights in their Instruments of Service, including copyrights. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers shall not own or claim a copyright in the Instruments of Service. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with the Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of the Architect's or Architect's consultants' reserved rights.

**§ 1.5.2** The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers are authorized to use and reproduce the Instruments of Service provided to them, subject to any protocols established pursuant to Sections 1.7 and 1.8, solely and exclusively for execution of the Work. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the copyright notice, if any, shown on the Instruments of Service. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers may not use the Instruments of Service on other projects or for additions to the Project outside the scope of the Work without the specific written consent of the Owner, Architect, and the Architect's consultants.

### **§ 1.6 Notice**

**§ 1.6.1** Except as otherwise provided in Section 1.6.2, where the Contract Documents require one party to notify or give notice to the other party, such notice shall be provided in writing to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed and shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person, by mail, by courier, or by electronic transmission if a method for electronic transmission is set forth in the Agreement.

**§ 1.6.2** Notice of Claims as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be provided in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly served only if delivered to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed by certified or registered mail, or by courier providing proof of delivery.

### **§ 1.7 Digital Data Use and Transmission**

The parties shall agree upon protocols governing the transmission and use of Instruments of Service or any other information or documentation in digital form. The parties will use AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, to establish the protocols for the development, use, transmission, and exchange of digital data.



### **§ 1.8 Building Information Models Use and Reliance**

Any use of, or reliance on, all or a portion of a building information model without agreement to protocols governing the use of, and reliance on, the information contained in the model and without having those protocols set forth in AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, and the requisite AIA Document G202™–2013, Project Building Information Modeling Protocol Form, shall be at the using or relying party's sole risk and without liability to the other party and its contractors or consultants, the authors of, or contributors to, the building information model, and each of their agents and employees.

## **ARTICLE 2 OWNER**

### **§ 2.1 General**

**§ 2.1.1** The Owner is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Owner shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Owner with respect to all matters requiring the Owner's approval or authorization. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1, the Architect does not have such authority. The term "Owner" means the Owner or the Owner's authorized representative.

**§ 2.1.2** The Owner shall furnish to the Contractor, within fifteen days after receipt of a written request, information necessary and relevant for the Contractor to evaluate, give notice of, or enforce mechanic's lien rights. Such information shall include a correct statement of the record legal title to the property on which the Project is located, usually referred to as the site, and the Owner's interest therein.

### **§ 2.2 Evidence of the Owner's Financial Arrangements**

**§ 2.2.1** Prior to commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. The Contractor shall have no obligation to commence the Work until the Owner provides such evidence. If commencement of the Work is delayed under this Section 2.2.1, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately.

**§ 2.2.2** Following commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract only if (1) the Owner fails to make payments to the Contractor as the Contract Documents require; (2) the Contractor identifies in writing a reasonable concern regarding the Owner's ability to make payment when due; or (3) a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum. If the Owner fails to provide such evidence, as required, within fourteen days of the Contractor's request, the Contractor may immediately stop the Work and, in that event, shall notify the Owner that the Work has stopped. However, if the request is made because a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum under (3) above, the Contractor may immediately stop only that portion of the Work affected by the change until reasonable evidence is provided. If the Work is stopped under this Section 2.2.2, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 2.2.3** After the Owner furnishes evidence of financial arrangements under this Section 2.2, the Owner shall not materially vary such financial arrangements without prior notice to the Contractor.

**§ 2.2.4** Where the Owner has designated information furnished under this Section 2.2 as "confidential," the Contractor shall keep the information confidential and shall not disclose it to any other person. However, the Contractor may disclose "confidential" information, after seven (7) days' notice to the Owner, where disclosure is required by law, including a subpoena or other form of compulsory legal process issued by a court or governmental entity, or by court or arbitrator(s) order. The Contractor may also disclose "confidential" information to its employees, consultants, sureties, Subcontractors and their employees, Sub-subcontractors, and others who need to know the content of such information solely and exclusively for the Project and who agree to maintain the confidentiality of such information.

### **§ 2.3 Information and Services Required of the Owner**

**§ 2.3.1** Except for permits and fees that are the responsibility of the Contractor under the Contract Documents, including those required under Section 3.7.1, the Owner shall secure and pay for necessary approvals, easements,

assessments and charges required for construction, use or occupancy of permanent structures or for permanent changes in existing facilities.

**§ 2.3.2** The Owner shall retain an architect lawfully licensed to practice architecture, or an entity lawfully practicing architecture, in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. That person or entity is identified as the Architect in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number.

**§ 2.3.3** If the employment of the Architect terminates, the Owner shall employ a successor to whom the Contractor has no reasonable objection and whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the Architect.

**§ 2.3.4** The Owner shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy of information furnished by the Owner but shall exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.

**§ 2.3.5** The Owner shall furnish information or services required of the Owner by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Contractor's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Contractor's written request for such information or services.

**§ 2.3.6** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor one copy of the Contract Documents for purposes of making reproductions pursuant to Section 1.5.2.

#### **§ 2.4 Owner's Right to Stop the Work**

If the Contractor fails to correct Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents as required by Section 12.2 or repeatedly fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may issue a written order to the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the Owner to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity, except to the extent required by Section 6.1.3.

#### **§ 2.5 Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work**

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a ten-day period after receipt of notice from the Owner to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such default or neglect. Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to prior approval of the Architect and the Architect may, pursuant to Section 9.5.1, withhold or nullify a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to reimburse the Owner for the reasonable cost of correcting such deficiencies, including Owner's expenses and compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such default, neglect, or failure. If current and future payments are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. If the Contractor disagrees with the actions of the Owner or the Architect, or the amounts claimed as costs to the Owner, the Contractor may file a Claim pursuant to Article 15.

### **ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR**

#### **§ 3.1 General**

**§ 3.1.1** The Contractor is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Contractor shall be lawfully licensed, if required in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Contractor with respect to all matters under this Contract. The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's authorized representative.

**§ 3.1.2** The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.1.3** The Contractor shall not be relieved of its obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the Architect in the Architect's administration of the Contract, or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons or entities other than the Contractor.

Init.

### **§ 3.2 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor**

**§ 3.2.1** Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.2.2** Because the Contract Documents are complementary, the Contractor shall, before starting each portion of the Work, carefully study and compare the various Contract Documents relative to that portion of the Work, as well as the information furnished by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.4, shall take field measurements of any existing conditions related to that portion of the Work, and shall observe any conditions at the site affecting it. These obligations are for the purpose of facilitating coordination and construction by the Contractor and are not for the purpose of discovering errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents; however, the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require. It is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.2.3** The Contractor is not required to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, but the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any nonconformity discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require.

**§ 3.2.4** If the Contractor believes that additional cost or time is involved because of clarifications or instructions the Architect issues in response to the Contractor's notices or requests for information pursuant to Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall submit Claims as provided in Article 15. If the Contractor fails to perform the obligations of Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall pay such costs and damages to the Owner, subject to Section 15.1.7, as would have been avoided if the Contractor had performed such obligations. If the Contractor performs those obligations, the Contractor shall not be liable to the Owner or Architect for damages resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omissions in the Contract Documents, for differences between field measurements or conditions and the Contract Documents, or for nonconformities of the Contract Documents to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities.

### **§ 3.3 Supervision and Construction Procedures**

**§ 3.3.1** The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for, and have control over, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures, and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract. If the Contract Documents give specific instructions concerning construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, the Contractor shall evaluate the jobsite safety thereof and shall be solely responsible for the jobsite safety of such means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. If the Contractor determines that such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures may not be safe, the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Owner and Architect, and shall propose alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect shall evaluate the proposed alternative solely for conformance with the design intent for the completed construction. Unless the Architect objects to the Contractor's proposed alternative, the Contractor shall perform the Work using its alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures.

**§ 3.3.2** The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.

**§ 3.3.3** The Contractor shall be responsible for inspection of portions of Work already performed to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent Work.

### **§ 3.4 Labor and Materials**

**§ 3.4.1** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work.

**§ 3.4.2** Except in the case of minor changes in the Work approved by the Architect in accordance with Section 3.12.8 or ordered by the Architect in accordance with Section 7.4, the Contractor may make substitutions only with the consent of the Owner, after evaluation by the Architect and in accordance with a Change Order or Construction Change Directive.

**§ 3.4.3** The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Work. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not properly skilled in tasks assigned to them.

### **§ 3.5 Warranty**

**§ 3.5.1** The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new unless the Contract Documents require or permit otherwise. The Contractor further warrants that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will be free from defects, except for those inherent in the quality of the Work the Contract Documents require or permit. Work, materials, or equipment not conforming to these requirements may be considered defective. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, alterations to the Work not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or normal wear and tear and normal usage. If required by the Architect, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.

**§ 3.5.2** All material, equipment, or other special warranties required by the Contract Documents shall be issued in the name of the Owner, or shall be transferable to the Owner, and shall commence in accordance with Section 9.8.4.

### **§ 3.6 Taxes**

The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work provided by the Contractor that are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect.

### **§ 3.7 Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws**

**§ 3.7.1** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit as well as for other permits, fees, licenses, and inspections by government agencies necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work that are customarily secured after execution of the Contract and legally required at the time bids are received or negotiations concluded.

**§ 3.7.2** The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work.

**§ 3.7.3** If the Contractor performs Work knowing it to be contrary to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such Work and shall bear the costs attributable to correction.

### **§ 3.7.4 Concealed or Unknown Conditions**

If the Contractor encounters conditions at the site that are (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (2) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature that differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly provide notice to the Owner and the Architect before conditions are disturbed and in no event later than 14 days after first observance of the conditions. The Architect will promptly investigate such conditions and, if the Architect determines that they differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, will recommend that an equitable adjustment be made in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. If the Architect determines that the conditions at the site are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Architect shall promptly notify the Owner and Contractor, stating the reasons. If either party disputes the Architect's determination or recommendation, that party may submit a Claim as provided in Article 15.

**§ 3.7.5** If, in the course of the Work, the Contractor encounters human remains or recognizes the existence of burial markers, archaeological sites or wetlands not indicated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately suspend any operations that would affect them and shall notify the Owner and Architect. Upon receipt of such notice, the Owner shall promptly take any action necessary to obtain governmental authorization required to resume the operations. The Contractor shall continue to suspend such operations until otherwise instructed by the Owner but shall continue with all other operations that do not affect those remains or features. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time arising from the existence of such remains or features may be made as provided in Article 15.

### **§ 3.8 Allowances**

**§ 3.8.1** The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract Documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct, but the Contractor shall not be required to employ persons or entities to whom the Contractor has reasonable objection.

**§ 3.8.2** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents,

- .1 allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered at the site and all required taxes, less applicable trade discounts;
- .2 Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit, and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amounts shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances; and
- .3 whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted accordingly by Change Order. The amount of the Change Order shall reflect (1) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Section 3.8.2.1 and (2) changes in Contractor's costs under Section 3.8.2.2.

**§ 3.8.3** Materials and equipment under an allowance shall be selected by the Owner with reasonable promptness.

### **§ 3.9 Superintendent**

**§ 3.9.1** The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor.

**§ 3.9.2** The Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the name and qualifications of a proposed superintendent. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor, stating whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to the proposed superintendent or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

**§ 3.9.3** The Contractor shall not employ a proposed superintendent to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not change the superintendent without the Owner's consent, which shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed.

### **§ 3.10 Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules**

**§ 3.10.1** The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract, shall submit for the Owner's and Architect's information a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work. The schedule shall contain detail appropriate for the Project, including (1) the date of commencement of the Work, interim schedule milestone dates, and the date of Substantial Completion; (2) an apportionment of the Work by construction activity; and (3) the time required for completion of each portion of the Work. The schedule shall provide for the orderly progression of the Work to completion and shall not exceed time limits current under the Contract Documents. The schedule shall be revised at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work and Project.

**§ 3.10.2** The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract and thereafter as necessary to maintain a current submittal schedule, shall submit a submittal schedule for the Architect's approval. The Architect's approval shall not be unreasonably delayed or withheld. The submittal schedule shall (1) be coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule, and (2) allow the Architect reasonable time to review submittals. If the Contractor fails to submit a submittal schedule, or fails to provide submittals in accordance with the approved submittal schedule, the

Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in Contract Sum or extension of Contract Time based on the time required for review of submittals.

**§ 3.10.3** The Contractor shall perform the Work in general accordance with the most recent schedules submitted to the Owner and Architect.

**§ 3.11 Documents and Samples at the Site**

The Contractor shall make available, at the Project site, the Contract Documents, including Change Orders, Construction Change Directives, and other Modifications, in good order and marked currently to indicate field changes and selections made during construction, and the approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar required submittals. These shall be in electronic form or paper copy, available to the Architect and Owner, and delivered to the Architect for submittal to the Owner upon completion of the Work as a record of the Work as constructed.

**§ 3.12 Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples**

**§ 3.12.1** Shop Drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules, and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.

**§ 3.12.2** Product Data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.

**§ 3.12.3** Samples are physical examples that illustrate materials, equipment, or workmanship, and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.

**§ 3.12.4** Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals are not Contract Documents. Their purpose is to demonstrate how the Contractor proposes to conform to the information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents for those portions of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittals. Review by the Architect is subject to the limitations of Section 4.2.7. Informational submittals upon which the Architect is not expected to take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents. Submittals that are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

**§ 3.12.5** The Contractor shall review for compliance with the Contract Documents, approve, and submit to the Architect, Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents, in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of Separate Contractors.

**§ 3.12.6** By submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals, the Contractor represents to the Owner and Architect that the Contractor has (1) reviewed and approved them, (2) determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so, and (3) checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.12.7** The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, until the respective submittal has been approved by the Architect.

**§ 3.12.8** The Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals except that the Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, unless the Contractor has specifically notified the Architect of such deviation at the time of submittal and (1) the Architect has given written approval to the specific deviation as a minor change in the Work, or (2) a Change Order or Construction Change Directive has been issued authorizing the deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, by the Architect's approval thereof.

**§ 3.12.9** The Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, to revisions other than those requested by the Architect on previous submittals. In the absence of such notice, the Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to such revisions.

**§ 3.12.10** The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services that constitute the practice of architecture or engineering unless such services are specifically required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or unless the Contractor needs to provide such services in order to carry out the Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures. The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services in violation of applicable law.

**§ 3.12.10.1** If professional design services or certifications by a design professional related to systems, materials, or equipment are specifically required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents, the Owner and the Architect will specify all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the performance and design criteria provided in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall cause such services or certifications to be provided by an appropriately licensed design professional, whose signature and seal shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, Shop Drawings, and other submittals prepared by such professional. Shop Drawings, and other submittals related to the Work, designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted to the Architect. The Owner and the Architect shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the services, certifications, and approvals performed or provided by such design professionals, provided the Owner and Architect have specified to the Contractor the performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. Pursuant to this Section 3.12.10, the Architect will review and approve or take other appropriate action on submittals only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.12.10.2** If the Contract Documents require the Contractor's design professional to certify that the Work has been performed in accordance with the design criteria, the Contractor shall furnish such certifications to the Architect at the time and in the form specified by the Architect.

### **§ 3.13 Use of Site**

The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, lawful orders of public authorities, and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment.

### **§ 3.14 Cutting and Patching**

**§ 3.14.1** The Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, fitting, or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly. All areas requiring cutting, fitting, or patching shall be restored to the condition existing prior to the cutting, fitting, or patching, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.14.2** The Contractor shall not damage or endanger a portion of the Work or fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors by cutting, patching, or otherwise altering such construction, or by excavation. The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter construction by the Owner or a Separate Contractor except with written consent of the Owner and of the Separate Contractor. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold, from the Owner or a Separate Contractor, its consent to cutting or otherwise altering the Work.

### **§ 3.15 Cleaning Up**

**§ 3.15.1** The Contractor shall keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of waste materials and rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. At completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus materials from and about the Project.

**§ 3.15.2** If the Contractor fails to clean up as provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so and the Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor.

### **§ 3.16 Access to Work**

The Contractor shall provide the Owner and Architect with access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located.

### **§ 3.17 Royalties, Patents and Copyrights**

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend suits or claims for infringement of copyrights and patent rights and shall hold the Owner and Architect harmless from loss on account thereof, but shall not be responsible for defense or loss when a particular design, process, or product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is required by the Contract Documents, or where the copyright violations are contained in Drawings, Specifications, or other documents prepared by the Owner or Architect. However, if an infringement of a copyright or patent is discovered by, or made known to, the Contractor, the Contractor shall be responsible for the loss unless the information is promptly furnished to the Architect.

### **§ 3.18 Indemnification**

**§ 3.18.1** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), but only to the extent caused by the negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of whether or not such claim, damage, loss, or expense is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder. Such obligation shall not be construed to negate, abridge, or reduce other rights or obligations of indemnity that would otherwise exist as to a party or person described in this Section 3.18.

**§ 3.18.2** In claims against any person or entity indemnified under this Section 3.18 by an employee of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, the indemnification obligation under Section 3.18.1 shall not be limited by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation, or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or a Subcontractor under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts, or other employee benefit acts.

## **ARTICLE 4 ARCHITECT**

### **§ 4.1 General**

**§ 4.1.1** The Architect is the person or entity retained by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.2 and identified as such in the Agreement.

**§ 4.1.2** Duties, responsibilities, and limitations of authority of the Architect as set forth in the Contract Documents shall not be restricted, modified, or extended without written consent of the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld.

### **§ 4.2 Administration of the Contract**

**§ 4.2.1** The Architect will provide administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents and will be an Owner's representative during construction until the date the Architect issues the final Certificate for Payment. The Architect will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.2** The Architect will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of construction, or as otherwise agreed with the Owner, to become generally familiar with the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and to determine in general if the Work observed is being performed in a manner indicating that the Work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Contract Documents. However, the Architect will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work. The Architect will not have control over, charge of, or responsibility for the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, or for the safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's rights and responsibilities under the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.3** On the basis of the site visits, the Architect will keep the Owner reasonably informed about the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and promptly report to the Owner (1) known deviations from the

Init.



Contract Documents, (2) known deviations from the most recent construction schedule submitted by the Contractor, and (3) defects and deficiencies observed in the Work. The Architect will not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. The Architect will not have control over or charge of, and will not be responsible for acts or omissions of, the Contractor, Subcontractors, or their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

#### **§ 4.2.4 Communications**

The Owner and Contractor shall include the Architect in all communications that relate to or affect the Architect's services or professional responsibilities. The Owner shall promptly notify the Architect of the substance of any direct communications between the Owner and the Contractor otherwise relating to the Project. Communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Communications by and with Subcontractors and suppliers shall be through the Contractor. Communications by and with Separate Contractors shall be through the Owner. The Contract Documents may specify other communication protocols.

**§ 4.2.5** Based on the Architect's evaluations of the Contractor's Applications for Payment, the Architect will review and certify the amounts due the Contractor and will issue Certificates for Payment in such amounts.

**§ 4.2.6** The Architect has authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents. Whenever the Architect considers it necessary or advisable, the Architect will have authority to require inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Sections 13.4.2 and 13.4.3, whether or not the Work is fabricated, installed or completed. However, neither this authority of the Architect nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect to the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

**§ 4.2.7** The Architect will review and approve, or take other appropriate action upon, the Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Architect's action will be taken in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness while allowing sufficient time in the Architect's professional judgment to permit adequate review. Review of such submittals is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Contract Documents. The Architect's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under Sections 3.3, 3.5, and 3.12. The Architect's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.

**§ 4.2.8** The Architect will prepare Change Orders and Construction Change Directives, and may order minor changes in the Work as provided in Section 7.4. The Architect will investigate and make determinations and recommendations regarding concealed and unknown conditions as provided in Section 3.7.4.

**§ 4.2.9** The Architect will conduct inspections to determine the date or dates of Substantial Completion and the date of final completion; issue Certificates of Substantial Completion pursuant to Section 9.8; receive and forward to the Owner, for the Owner's review and records, written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by the Contractor pursuant to Section 9.10; and issue a final Certificate for Payment pursuant to Section 9.10.

**§ 4.2.10** If the Owner and Architect agree, the Architect will provide one or more Project representatives to assist in carrying out the Architect's responsibilities at the site. The Owner shall notify the Contractor of any change in the duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of the Project representatives.

**§ 4.2.11** The Architect will interpret and decide matters concerning performance under, and requirements of, the Contract Documents on written request of either the Owner or Contractor. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness.

**§ 4.2.12** Interpretations and decisions of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of, and reasonably inferable from, the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations

Init.

and decisions, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor, will not show partiality to either, and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

**§ 4.2.13** The Architect's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.14** The Architect will review and respond to requests for information about the Contract Documents. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If appropriate, the Architect will prepare and issue supplemental Drawings and Specifications in response to the requests for information.

## **ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS**

### **§ 5.1 Definitions**

**§ 5.1.1** A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The term "Subcontractor" does not include a Separate Contractor or the subcontractors of a Separate Contractor.

**§ 5.1.2** A Sub-subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Sub-subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Sub-subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Sub-subcontractor.

### **§ 5.2 Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work**

**§ 5.2.1** Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the persons or entities proposed for each principal portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

**§ 5.2.2** The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made reasonable objection.

**§ 5.2.3** If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Contractor, the Contractor shall propose another to whom the Owner or Architect has no reasonable objection. If the proposed but rejected Subcontractor was reasonably capable of performing the Work, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be increased or decreased by the difference, if any, occasioned by such change, and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued before commencement of the substitute Subcontractor's Work. However, no increase in the Contract Sum or Contract Time shall be allowed for such change unless the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in submitting names as required.

**§ 5.2.4** The Contractor shall not substitute a Subcontractor, person, or entity for one previously selected if the Owner or Architect makes reasonable objection to such substitution.

### **§ 5.3 Subcontractual Relations**

By appropriate written agreement, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities, including the responsibility for safety of the Subcontractor's Work that the Contractor, by these Contract Documents, assumes toward the Owner and Architect. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the Owner and Architect under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights, and shall allow to the Subcontractor, unless specifically provided otherwise in the subcontract agreement, the benefit of all rights, remedies, and redress against the Contractor that the Contractor, by the Contract Documents, has against the Owner. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with Sub-subcontractors. The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor,

prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound, and, upon written request of the Subcontractor, identify to the Subcontractor terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement that may be at variance with the Contract Documents. Subcontractors will similarly make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed Sub-subcontractors.

#### **§ 5.4 Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts**

**§ 5.4.1** Each subcontract agreement for a portion of the Work is assigned by the Contractor to the Owner, provided that

- .1 assignment is effective only after termination of the Contract by the Owner for cause pursuant to Section 14.2 and only for those subcontract agreements that the Owner accepts by notifying the Subcontractor and Contractor; and
- .2 assignment is subject to the prior rights of the surety, if any, obligated under bond relating to the Contract.

When the Owner accepts the assignment of a subcontract agreement, the Owner assumes the Contractor's rights and obligations under the subcontract.

**§ 5.4.2** Upon such assignment, if the Work has been suspended for more than 30 days, the Subcontractor's compensation shall be equitably adjusted for increases in cost resulting from the suspension.

**§ 5.4.3** Upon assignment to the Owner under this Section 5.4, the Owner may further assign the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity. If the Owner assigns the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity, the Owner shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all of the successor contractor's obligations under the subcontract.

### **ARTICLE 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**

#### **§ 6.1 Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts**

**§ 6.1.1** The term "Separate Contractor(s)" shall mean other contractors retained by the Owner under separate agreements. The Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and with Separate Contractors retained under Conditions of the Contract substantially similar to those of this Contract, including those provisions of the Conditions of the Contract related to insurance and waiver of subrogation.

**§ 6.1.2** When separate contracts are awarded for different portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site, the term "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case shall mean the Contractor who executes each separate Owner-Contractor Agreement.

**§ 6.1.3** The Owner shall provide for coordination of the activities of the Owner's own forces and of each Separate Contractor with the Work of the Contractor, who shall cooperate with them. The Contractor shall participate with any Separate Contractors and the Owner in reviewing their construction schedules. The Contractor shall make any revisions to its construction schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement. The construction schedules shall then constitute the schedules to be used by the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner until subsequently revised.

**§ 6.1.4** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner performs construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces or with Separate Contractors, the Owner or its Separate Contractors shall have the same obligations and rights that the Contractor has under the Conditions of the Contract, including, without excluding others, those stated in Article 3, this Article 6, and Articles 10, 11, and 12.

#### **§ 6.2 Mutual Responsibility**

**§ 6.2.1** The Contractor shall afford the Owner and Separate Contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities, and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents.

**§ 6.2.2** If part of the Contractor's Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by the Owner or a Separate Contractor, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work,

promptly notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that would render it unsuitable for proper execution and results of the Contractor's Work. Failure of the Contractor to notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects prior to proceeding with the Work shall constitute an acknowledgment that the Owner's or Separate Contractor's completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper to receive the Contractor's Work. The Contractor shall not be responsible for discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that are not apparent.

**§ 6.2.3** The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for costs the Owner incurs that are payable to a Separate Contractor because of the Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities or defective construction. The Owner shall be responsible to the Contractor for costs the Contractor incurs because of a Separate Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities, damage to the Work or defective construction.

**§ 6.2.4** The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage that the Contractor wrongfully causes to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the Owner or Separate Contractor as provided in Section 10.2.5.

**§ 6.2.5** The Owner and each Separate Contractor shall have the same responsibilities for cutting and patching as are described for the Contractor in Section 3.14.

### **§ 6.3 Owner's Right to Clean Up**

If a dispute arises among the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner as to the responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining the premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish, the Owner may clean up and the Architect will allocate the cost among those responsible.

## **ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK**

### **§ 7.1 General**

**§ 7.1.1** Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive or order for a minor change in the Work, subject to the limitations stated in this Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

**§ 7.1.2** A Change Order shall be based upon agreement among the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. A Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner and Architect and may or may not be agreed to by the Contractor. An order for a minor change in the Work may be issued by the Architect alone.

**§ 7.1.3** Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall proceed promptly with changes in the Work, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or order for a minor change in the Work.

### **§ 7.2 Change Orders**

**§ 7.2.1** A Change Order is a written instrument prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner, Contractor, and Architect stating their agreement upon all of the following:

- .1 The change in the Work;
- .2 The amount of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum; and
- .3 The extent of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time.

### **§ 7.3 Construction Change Directives**

**§ 7.3.1** A Construction Change Directive is a written order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner and Architect, directing a change in the Work prior to agreement on adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. The Owner may by Construction Change Directive, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions, or other revisions, the Contract Sum and Contract Time being adjusted accordingly.

**§ 7.3.2** A Construction Change Directive shall be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order.

**§ 7.3.3** If the Construction Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on one of the following methods:

- .1 Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation;
- .2 Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon;
- .3 Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee; or
- .4 As provided in Section 7.3.4.

**§ 7.3.4** If the Contractor does not respond promptly or disagrees with the method for adjustment in the Contract Sum, the Architect shall determine the adjustment on the basis of reasonable expenditures and savings of those performing the Work attributable to the change, including, in case of an increase in the Contract Sum, an amount for overhead and profit as set forth in the Agreement, or if no such amount is set forth in the Agreement, a reasonable amount. In such case, and also under Section 7.3.3.3, the Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Architect may prescribe, an itemized accounting together with appropriate supporting data. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Section 7.3.4 shall be limited to the following:

- .1 Costs of labor, including applicable payroll taxes, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, workers' compensation insurance, and other employee costs approved by the Architect;
- .2 Costs of materials, supplies, and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;
- .3 Rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others;
- .4 Costs of premiums for all bonds and insurance, permit fees, and sales, use, or similar taxes, directly related to the change; and
- .5 Costs of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.

**§ 7.3.5** If the Contractor disagrees with the adjustment in the Contract Time, the Contractor may make a Claim in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

**§ 7.3.6** Upon receipt of a Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved and advise the Architect of the Contractor's agreement or disagreement with the method, if any, provided in the Construction Change Directive for determining the proposed adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.

**§ 7.3.7** A Construction Change Directive signed by the Contractor indicates the Contractor's agreement therewith, including adjustment in Contract Sum and Contract Time or the method for determining them. Such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded as a Change Order.

**§ 7.3.8** The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the Owner for a deletion or change that results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost as confirmed by the Architect. When both additions and credits covering related Work or substitutions are involved in a change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, with respect to that change.

**§ 7.3.9** Pending final determination of the total cost of a Construction Change Directive to the Owner, the Contractor may request payment for Work completed under the Construction Change Directive in Applications for Payment. The Architect will make an interim determination for purposes of monthly certification for payment for those costs and certify for payment the amount that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified. The Architect's interim determination of cost shall adjust the Contract Sum on the same basis as a Change Order, subject to the right of either party to disagree and assert a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

**§ 7.3.10** When the Owner and Contractor agree with a determination made by the Architect concerning the adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time, or otherwise reach agreement upon the adjustments, such agreement shall be effective immediately and the Architect will prepare a Change Order. Change Orders may be issued for all or any part of a Construction Change Directive.

#### **§ 7.4 Minor Changes in the Work**

The Architect may order minor changes in the Work that are consistent with the intent of the Contract Documents and do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Sum or an extension of the Contract Time. The Architect's order for minor changes shall be in writing. If the Contractor believes that the proposed minor change in the Work will

Init.

affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor shall notify the Architect and shall not proceed to implement the change in the Work. If the Contractor performs the Work set forth in the Architect's order for a minor change without prior notice to the Architect that such change will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor waives any adjustment to the Contract Sum or extension of the Contract Time.

## **ARTICLE 8 TIME**

### **§ 8.1 Definitions**

**§ 8.1.1** Unless otherwise provided, Contract Time is the period of time, including authorized adjustments, allotted in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.

**§ 8.1.2** The date of commencement of the Work is the date established in the Agreement.

**§ 8.1.3** The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Section 9.8.

**§ 8.1.4** The term "day" as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

### **§ 8.2 Progress and Completion**

**§ 8.2.1** Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract. By executing the Agreement, the Contractor confirms that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work.

**§ 8.2.2** The Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the Owner in writing, commence the Work prior to the effective date of insurance required to be furnished by the Contractor and Owner.

**§ 8.2.3** The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time.

### **§ 8.3 Delays and Extensions of Time**

**§ 8.3.1** If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress of the Work by (1) an act or neglect of the Owner or Architect, of an employee of either, or of a Separate Contractor; (2) by changes ordered in the Work; (3) by labor disputes, fire, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties, adverse weather conditions documented in accordance with Section 15.1.6.2, or other causes beyond the Contractor's control; (4) by delay authorized by the Owner pending mediation and binding dispute resolution; or (5) by other causes that the Contractor asserts, and the Architect determines, justify delay, then the Contract Time shall be extended for such reasonable time as the Architect may determine.

**§ 8.3.2** Claims relating to time shall be made in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

**§ 8.3.3** This Section 8.3 does not preclude recovery of damages for delay by either party under other provisions of the Contract Documents.

## **ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION**

### **§ 9.1 Contract Sum**

**§ 9.1.1** The Contract Sum is stated in the Agreement and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.1.2** If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are materially changed so that application of such unit prices to the actual quantities causes substantial inequity to the Owner or Contractor, the applicable unit prices shall be equitably adjusted.

### **§ 9.2 Schedule of Values**

Where the Contract is based on a stipulated sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Contractor shall submit a schedule of values to the Architect before the first Application for Payment, allocating the entire Contract Sum to the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in the form, and supported by the data to substantiate its accuracy, required by the Architect. This schedule, unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment. Any changes to the schedule of values shall be submitted to the Architect and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Architect may require, and

Init.

unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's subsequent Applications for Payment.

### **§ 9.3 Applications for Payment**

**§ 9.3.1** At least ten days before the date established for each progress payment, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an itemized Application for Payment prepared in accordance with the schedule of values, if required under Section 9.2, for completed portions of the Work. The application shall be notarized, if required, and supported by all data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment that the Owner or Architect require, such as copies of requisitions, and releases and waivers of liens from Subcontractors and suppliers, and shall reflect retainage if provided for in the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.3.1.1** As provided in Section 7.3.9, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, or by interim determinations of the Architect, but not yet included in Change Orders.

**§ 9.3.1.2** Applications for Payment shall not include requests for payment for portions of the Work for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or supplier, unless such Work has been performed by others whom the Contractor intends to pay.

**§ 9.3.2** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, and shall include the costs of applicable insurance, storage, and transportation to the site, for such materials and equipment stored off the site.

**§ 9.3.3** The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances, in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, or other persons or entities that provided labor, materials, and equipment relating to the Work.

### **§ 9.4 Certificates for Payment**

**§ 9.4.1** The Architect will, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, either (1) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment in the full amount of the Application for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor; or (2) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reasons for withholding certification in part as provided in Section 9.5.1; or (3) withhold certification of the entire Application for Payment, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reason for withholding certification in whole as provided in Section 9.5.1.

**§ 9.4.2** The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect to the Owner, based on the Architect's evaluation of the Work and the data in the Application for Payment, that, to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information, and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified. The foregoing representations are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to correction of minor deviations from the Contract Documents prior to completion, and to specific qualifications expressed by the Architect. However, the issuance of a Certificate for Payment will not be a representation that the Architect has (1) made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work; (2) reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures; (3) reviewed copies of requisitions received from Subcontractors and suppliers and other data requested by the Owner to substantiate the Contractor's right to payment; or (4) made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose the Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Sum.

### **§ 9.5 Decisions to Withhold Certification**

**§ 9.5.1** The Architect may withhold a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the Owner, if in the Architect's opinion the representations to the Owner required by Section 9.4.2 cannot be made. If the Architect is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the Architect will notify the Contractor and Owner as provided in Section 9.4.1. If the Contractor and Architect cannot agree on a revised amount, the Architect will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to make such representations to the Owner. The Architect may also withhold a Certificate for Payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence, may nullify the whole or a part of a Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the Architect's opinion to protect the Owner from loss for which the Contractor is responsible, including loss resulting from acts and omissions described in Section 3.3.2, because of

- .1 defective Work not remedied;
- .2 third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims, unless security acceptable to the Owner is provided by the Contractor;
- .3 failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or suppliers for labor, materials or equipment;
- .4 reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
- .5 damage to the Owner or a Separate Contractor;
- .6 reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay; or
- .7 repeated failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.5.2** When either party disputes the Architect's decision regarding a Certificate for Payment under Section 9.5.1, in whole or in part, that party may submit a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

**§ 9.5.3** When the reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld.

**§ 9.5.4** If the Architect withholds certification for payment under Section 9.5.1.3, the Owner may, at its sole option, issue joint checks to the Contractor and to any Subcontractor or supplier to whom the Contractor failed to make payment for Work properly performed or material or equipment suitably delivered. If the Owner makes payments by joint check, the Owner shall notify the Architect and the Contractor shall reflect such payment on its next Application for Payment.

### **§ 9.6 Progress Payments**

**§ 9.6.1** After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment in the manner and within the time provided in the Contract Documents, and shall so notify the Architect.

**§ 9.6.2** The Contractor shall pay each Subcontractor, no later than seven days after receipt of payment from the Owner, the amount to which the Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of the Subcontractor's portion of the Work. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner.

**§ 9.6.3** The Architect will, on request, furnish to a Subcontractor, if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the Architect and Owner on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.

**§ 9.6.4** The Owner has the right to request written evidence from the Contractor that the Contractor has properly paid Subcontractors and suppliers amounts paid by the Owner to the Contractor for subcontracted Work. If the Contractor fails to furnish such evidence within seven days, the Owner shall have the right to contact Subcontractors and suppliers to ascertain whether they have been properly paid. Neither the Owner nor Architect shall have an obligation to pay, or to see to the payment of money to, a Subcontractor or supplier, except as may otherwise be required by law.

**§ 9.6.5** The Contractor's payments to suppliers shall be treated in a manner similar to that provided in Sections 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4.



**§ 9.6.6** A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.6.7** Unless the Contractor provides the Owner with a payment bond in the full penal sum of the Contract Sum, payments received by the Contractor for Work properly performed by Subcontractors or provided by suppliers shall be held by the Contractor for those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor for which payment was made by the Owner. Nothing contained herein shall require money to be placed in a separate account and not commingled with money of the Contractor, create any fiduciary liability or tort liability on the part of the Contractor for breach of trust, or entitle any person or entity to an award of punitive damages against the Contractor for breach of the requirements of this provision.

**§ 9.6.8** Provided the Owner has fulfilled its payment obligations under the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall defend and indemnify the Owner from all loss, liability, damage or expense, including reasonable attorney's fees and litigation expenses, arising out of any lien claim or other claim for payment by any Subcontractor or supplier of any tier. Upon receipt of notice of a lien claim or other claim for payment, the Owner shall notify the Contractor. If approved by the applicable court, when required, the Contractor may substitute a surety bond for the property against which the lien or other claim for payment has been asserted.

#### **§ 9.7 Failure of Payment**

If the Architect does not issue a Certificate for Payment, through no fault of the Contractor, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, or if the Owner does not pay the Contractor within seven days after the date established in the Contract Documents, the amount certified by the Architect or awarded by binding dispute resolution, then the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and Architect, stop the Work until payment of the amount owing has been received. The Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided for in the Contract Documents.

#### **§ 9.8 Substantial Completion**

**§ 9.8.1** Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use.

**§ 9.8.2** When the Contractor considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the Owner agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Architect a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.8.3** Upon receipt of the Contractor's list, the Architect will make an inspection to determine whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If the Architect's inspection discloses any item, whether or not included on the Contractor's list, which is not sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work or designated portion thereof for its intended use, the Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item upon notification by the Architect. In such case, the Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Architect to determine Substantial Completion.

**§ 9.8.4** When the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete, the Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion; establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance; and fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

**§ 9.8.5** The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted to the Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in the Certificate. Upon such acceptance, and consent of surety if any, the Owner shall make payment of retainage applying to the Work or designated portion thereof. Such payment shall be adjusted for Work that is incomplete or not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

### **§ 9.9 Partial Occupancy or Use**

**§ 9.9.1** The Owner may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage when such portion is designated by separate agreement with the Contractor, provided such occupancy or use is consented to by the insurer and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Project. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is substantially complete, provided the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage, if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers a portion substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the Architect as provided under Section 9.8.2. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. The stage of the progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the Owner and Contractor or, if no agreement is reached, by decision of the Architect.

**§ 9.9.2** Immediately prior to such partial occupancy or use, the Owner, Contractor, and Architect shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work.

**§ 9.9.3** Unless otherwise agreed upon, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portions of the Work shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

### **§ 9.10 Final Completion and Final Payment**

**§ 9.10.1** Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance and upon receipt of a final Application for Payment, the Architect will promptly make such inspection. When the Architect finds the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents and the Contract fully performed, the Architect will promptly issue a final Certificate for Payment stating that to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief, and on the basis of the Architect's on-site visits and inspections, the Work has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents and that the entire balance found to be due the Contractor and noted in the final Certificate is due and payable. The Architect's final Certificate for Payment will constitute a further representation that conditions listed in Section 9.10.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled.

**§ 9.10.2** Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the Architect (1) an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the Owner or the Owner's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by Owner) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) a certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Contract Documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents, (4) consent of surety, if any, to final payment, (5) documentation of any special warranties, such as manufacturers' warranties or specific Subcontractor warranties, and (6) if required by the Owner, other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts and releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the Owner. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the Owner, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against such lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance. If a lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging the lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees.

**§ 9.10.3** If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, and the Architect so confirms, the Owner shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Architect, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed, corrected, and accepted. If the remaining balance for Work not fully completed or corrected is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract Documents, and if bonds have been furnished, the written consent of the surety to payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Architect prior to certification of such payment. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, except that it shall not constitute a waiver of Claims.

Init.

- § 9.10.4** The making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Owner except those arising from
- .1 liens, Claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;
  - .2 failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents;
  - .3 terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents; or
  - .4 audits performed by the Owner, if permitted by the Contract Documents, after final payment.

**§ 9.10.5** Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a supplier, shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously made in writing and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

## **ARTICLE 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**

### **§ 10.1 Safety Precautions and Programs**

The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract.

### **§ 10.2 Safety of Persons and Property**

**§ 10.2.1** The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury, or loss to

- .1 employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby;
- .2 the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody, or control of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a Sub-subcontractor; and
- .3 other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, and utilities not designated for removal, relocation, or replacement in the course of construction.

**§ 10.2.2** The Contractor shall comply with, and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities, bearing on safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury, or loss.

**§ 10.2.3** The Contractor shall implement, erect, and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards; promulgating safety regulations; and notifying the owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities of the safeguards.

**§ 10.2.4** When use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment, or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.

**§ 10.2.5** The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss (other than damage or loss insured under property insurance required by the Contract Documents) to property referred to in Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3 caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable and for which the Contractor is responsible under Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3. The Contractor may make a Claim for the cost to remedy the damage or loss to the extent such damage or loss is attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly employed by either of them, or by anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18.

**§ 10.2.6** The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents. This person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner and Architect.

**§ 10.2.7** The Contractor shall not permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to cause damage or create an unsafe condition.

#### **§ 10.2.8 Injury or Damage to Person or Property**

If either party suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, notice of the injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding 21 days after discovery. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

#### **§ 10.3 Hazardous Materials and Substances**

**§ 10.3.1** The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials or substances. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance not addressed in the Contract Documents and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons resulting from a material or substance, including but not limited to asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and notify the Owner and Architect of the condition.

**§ 10.3.2** Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice, the Owner shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify the presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the event such material or substance is found to be present, to cause it to be rendered harmless. Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish in writing to the Contractor and Architect the names and qualifications of persons or entities who are to perform tests verifying the presence or absence of the material or substance or who are to perform the task of removal or safe containment of the material or substance. The Contractor and the Architect will promptly reply to the Owner in writing stating whether or not either has reasonable objection to the persons or entities proposed by the Owner. If either the Contractor or Architect has an objection to a person or entity proposed by the Owner, the Owner shall propose another to whom the Contractor and the Architect have no reasonable objection. When the material or substance has been rendered harmless, Work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement of the Owner and Contractor. By Change Order, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable additional costs of shutdown, delay, and start-up.

**§ 10.3.3** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Owner shall indemnify and hold harmless the Contractor, Subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work in the affected area if in fact the material or substance presents the risk of bodily injury or death as described in Section 10.3.1 and has not been rendered harmless, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), except to the extent that such damage, loss, or expense is due to the fault or negligence of the party seeking indemnity.

**§ 10.3.4** The Owner shall not be responsible under this Section 10.3 for hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site unless such materials or substances are required by the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be responsible for hazardous materials or substances required by the Contract Documents, except to the extent of the Contractor's fault or negligence in the use and handling of such materials or substances.

**§ 10.3.5** The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for the cost and expense the Owner incurs (1) for remediation of hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site and negligently handles, or (2) where the Contractor fails to perform its obligations under Section 10.3.1, except to the extent that the cost and expense are due to the Owner's fault or negligence.

**§ 10.3.6** If, without negligence on the part of the Contractor, the Contractor is held liable by a government agency for the cost of remediation of a hazardous material or substance solely by reason of performing Work as required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all cost and expense thereby incurred.

#### **§ 10.4 Emergencies**

In an emergency affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7.

## **ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS**

### **§ 11.1 Contractor's Insurance and Bonds**

**§ 11.1.1** The Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Owner, Architect, and Architect's consultants shall be named as additional insureds under the Contractor's commercial general liability policy or as otherwise described in the Contract Documents.

**§ 11.1.2** The Contractor shall provide surety bonds of the types, for such penal sums, and subject to such terms and conditions as required by the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

**§ 11.1.3** Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall authorize a copy to be furnished.

**§ 11.1.4 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Contractor's Required Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Contractor becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide notice to the Owner of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Upon receipt of notice from the Contractor, the Owner shall, unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Owner, have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by the Contractor. The furnishing of notice by the Contractor shall not relieve the Contractor of any contractual obligation to provide any required coverage.

### **§ 11.2 Owner's Insurance**

**§ 11.2.1** The Owner shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Owner shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

**§ 11.2.2 Failure to Purchase Required Property Insurance.** If the Owner fails to purchase and maintain the required property insurance, with all of the coverages and in the amounts described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall inform the Contractor in writing prior to commencement of the Work. Upon receipt of notice from the Owner, the Contractor may delay commencement of the Work and may obtain insurance that will protect the interests of the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-Subcontractors in the Work. When the failure to provide coverage has been cured or resolved, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be equitably adjusted. In the event the Owner fails to procure coverage, the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent the loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance to have been procured by the Owner. The cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by a Change Order. If the Owner does not provide written notice, and the Contractor is damaged by the failure or neglect of the Owner to purchase or maintain the required insurance, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all reasonable costs and damages attributable thereto.

**§ 11.2.3 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Owner's Required Property Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Owner becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any property insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall provide notice to the Contractor of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Contractor: (1) the Contractor, upon receipt of notice from the Owner, shall have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by either the Owner or the Contractor; (2) the Contract Time and Contract Sum shall be equitably adjusted; and (3) the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent any loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance had it not expired or been cancelled. If the Contractor purchases replacement coverage, the cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by an appropriate Change Order. The furnishing of notice by the Owner shall not relieve the Owner of any contractual obligation to provide required insurance.

Init.

### **§ 11.3 Waivers of Subrogation**

**§ 11.3.1** The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, each of the other; (2) the Architect and Architect's consultants; and (3) Separate Contractors, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, for damages caused by fire, or other causes of loss, to the extent those losses are covered by property insurance required by the Agreement or other property insurance applicable to the Project, except such rights as they have to proceeds of such insurance. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require similar written waivers in favor of the individuals and entities identified above from the Architect, Architect's consultants, Separate Contractors, subcontractors, and sub-subcontractors. The policies of insurance purchased and maintained by each person or entity agreeing to waive claims pursuant to this section 11.3.1 shall not prohibit this waiver of subrogation. This waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity (1) even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, (2) even though that person or entity did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, or (3) whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the damaged property.

**§ 11.3.2** If during the Project construction period the Owner insures properties, real or personal or both, at or adjacent to the site by property insurance under policies separate from those insuring the Project, or if after final payment property insurance is to be provided on the completed Project through a policy or policies other than those insuring the Project during the construction period, to the extent permissible by such policies, the Owner waives all rights in accordance with the terms of Section 11.3.1 for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss covered by this separate property insurance.

### **§ 11.4 Loss of Use, Business Interruption, and Delay in Completion Insurance**

The Owner, at the Owner's option, may purchase and maintain insurance that will protect the Owner against loss of use of the Owner's property, or the inability to conduct normal operations, due to fire or other causes of loss. The Owner waives all rights of action against the Contractor and Architect for loss of use of the Owner's property, due to fire or other hazards however caused.

### **§ 11.5 Adjustment and Settlement of Insured Loss**

**§ 11.5.1** A loss insured under the property insurance required by the Agreement shall be adjusted by the Owner as fiduciary and made payable to the Owner as fiduciary for the insureds, as their interests may appear, subject to requirements of any applicable mortgagee clause and of Section 11.5.2. The Owner shall pay the Architect and Contractor their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Owner, and by appropriate agreements the Architect and Contractor shall make payments to their consultants and Subcontractors in similar manner.

**§ 11.5.2** Prior to settlement of an insured loss, the Owner shall notify the Contractor of the terms of the proposed settlement as well as the proposed allocation of the insurance proceeds. The Contractor shall have 14 days from receipt of notice to object to the proposed settlement or allocation of the proceeds. If the Contractor does not object, the Owner shall settle the loss and the Contractor shall be bound by the settlement and allocation. Upon receipt, the Owner shall deposit the insurance proceeds in a separate account and make the appropriate distributions. Thereafter, if no other agreement is made or the Owner does not terminate the Contract for convenience, the Owner and Contractor shall execute a Change Order for reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work in the amount allocated for that purpose. If the Contractor timely objects to either the terms of the proposed settlement or the allocation of the proceeds, the Owner may proceed to settle the insured loss, and any dispute between the Owner and Contractor arising out of the settlement or allocation of the proceeds shall be resolved pursuant to Article 15. Pending resolution of any dispute, the Owner may issue a Construction Change Directive for the reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work.

## **ARTICLE 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK**

### **§ 12.1 Uncovering of Work**

**§ 12.1.1** If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the Architect's request or to requirements specifically expressed in the Contract Documents, it must, if requested in writing by the Architect, be uncovered for the Architect's examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

**§ 12.1.2** If a portion of the Work has been covered that the Architect has not specifically requested to examine prior to its being covered, the Architect may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment to

Init.

the Contract Sum and Contract Time as may be appropriate. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the costs of uncovering the Work, and the cost of correction, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

## **§ 12.2 Correction of Work**

### **§ 12.2.1 Before Substantial Completion**

The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Architect or failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, discovered before Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. Costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections, the cost of uncovering and replacement, and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

### **§ 12.2.2 After Substantial Completion**

**§ 12.2.2.1** In addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.5, if, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Section 9.9.1, or by terms of any applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of notice from the Owner to do so, unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. The Owner shall give such notice promptly after discovery of the condition. During the one-year period for correction of Work, if the Owner fails to notify the Contractor and give the Contractor an opportunity to make the correction, the Owner waives the rights to require correction by the Contractor and to make a claim for breach of warranty. If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time during that period after receipt of notice from the Owner or Architect, the Owner may correct it in accordance with Section 2.5.

**§ 12.2.2.2** The one-year period for correction of Work shall be extended with respect to portions of Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual completion of that portion of the Work.

**§ 12.2.2.3** The one-year period for correction of Work shall not be extended by corrective Work performed by the Contractor pursuant to this Section 12.2.

**§ 12.2.3** The Contractor shall remove from the site portions of the Work that are not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and are neither corrected by the Contractor nor accepted by the Owner.

**§ 12.2.4** The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting destroyed or damaged construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors, whether completed or partially completed, caused by the Contractor's correction or removal of Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 12.2.5** Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations the Contractor has under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the one-year period for correction of Work as described in Section 12.2.2 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work.

## **§ 12.3 Acceptance of Nonconforming Work**

If the Owner prefers to accept Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum will be reduced as appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

## **ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

### **§ 13.1 Governing Law**

The Contract shall be governed by the law of the place where the Project is located, excluding that jurisdiction's choice of law rules. If the parties have selected arbitration as the method of binding dispute resolution, the Federal Arbitration Act shall govern Section 15.4.

## **§ 13.2 Successors and Assigns**

**§ 13.2.1** The Owner and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives to covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. Except as provided in Section 13.2.2, neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the other. If either party attempts to make an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract.

**§ 13.2.2** The Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract to a lender providing construction financing for the Project, if the lender assumes the Owner's rights and obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate the assignment.

## **§ 13.3 Rights and Remedies**

**§ 13.3.1** Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.

**§ 13.3.2** No action or failure to act by the Owner, Architect, or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed upon in writing.

## **§ 13.4 Tests and Inspections**

**§ 13.4.1** Tests, inspections, and approvals of portions of the Work shall be made as required by the Contract Documents and by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules, and regulations or lawful orders of public authorities. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections, and approvals with an independent testing laboratory or entity acceptable to the Owner, or with the appropriate public authority, and shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections, and approvals. The Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. The Owner shall bear costs of tests, inspections, or approvals that do not become requirements until after bids are received or negotiations concluded. The Owner shall directly arrange and pay for tests, inspections, or approvals where building codes or applicable laws or regulations so require.

**§ 13.4.2** If the Architect, Owner, or public authorities having jurisdiction determine that portions of the Work require additional testing, inspection, or approval not included under Section 13.4.1, the Architect will, upon written authorization from the Owner, instruct the Contractor to make arrangements for such additional testing, inspection, or approval, by an entity acceptable to the Owner, and the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Architect of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. Such costs, except as provided in Section 13.4.3, shall be at the Owner's expense.

**§ 13.4.3** If procedures for testing, inspection, or approval under Sections 13.4.1 and 13.4.2 reveal failure of the portions of the Work to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents, all costs made necessary by such failure, including those of repeated procedures and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

**§ 13.4.4** Required certificates of testing, inspection, or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Architect.

**§ 13.4.5** If the Architect is to observe tests, inspections, or approvals required by the Contract Documents, the Architect will do so promptly and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.

**§ 13.4.6** Tests or inspections conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

## **§ 13.5 Interest**

Payments due and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest from the date payment is due at the rate the parties agree upon in writing or, in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.



## **ARTICLE 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT**

### **§ 14.1 Termination by the Contractor**

**§ 14.1.1** The Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of 30 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, for any of the following reasons:

- .1 Issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .2 An act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency, that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .3 Because the Architect has not issued a Certificate for Payment and has not notified the Contractor of the reason for withholding certification as provided in Section 9.4.1, or because the Owner has not made payment on a Certificate for Payment within the time stated in the Contract Documents; or
- .4 The Owner has failed to furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence as required by Section 2.2.

**§ 14.1.2** The Contractor may terminate the Contract if, through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, repeated suspensions, delays, or interruptions of the entire Work by the Owner as described in Section 14.3, constitute in the aggregate more than 100 percent of the total number of days scheduled for completion, or 120 days in any 365-day period, whichever is less.

**§ 14.1.3** If one of the reasons described in Section 14.1.1 or 14.1.2 exists, the Contractor may, upon seven days' notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, as well as reasonable overhead and profit on Work not executed, and costs incurred by reason of such termination.

**§ 14.1.4** If the Work is stopped for a period of 60 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or their agents or employees or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work because the Owner has repeatedly failed to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to matters important to the progress of the Work, the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and the Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner as provided in Section 14.1.3.

### **§ 14.2 Termination by the Owner for Cause**

**§ 14.2.1** The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor

- .1 repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;
- .2 fails to make payment to Subcontractors or suppliers in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors or suppliers;
- .3 repeatedly disregards applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of a public authority; or
- .4 otherwise is guilty of substantial breach of a provision of the Contract Documents.

**§ 14.2.2** When any of the reasons described in Section 14.2.1 exist, and upon certification by the Architect that sufficient cause exists to justify such action, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days' notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may, subject to any prior rights of the surety:

- .1 Exclude the Contractor from the site and take possession of all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery thereon owned by the Contractor;
- .2 Accept assignment of subcontracts pursuant to Section 5.4; and
- .3 Finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient. Upon written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the costs incurred by the Owner in finishing the Work.

**§ 14.2.3** When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Section 14.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is finished.

**§ 14.2.4** If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds costs of finishing the Work, including compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, and other damages incurred by the Owner and not expressly waived, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor. If such costs and damages exceed the unpaid balance,

the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The amount to be paid to the Contractor or Owner, as the case may be, shall be certified by the Initial Decision Maker, upon application, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

#### **§ 14.3 Suspension by the Owner for Convenience**

**§ 14.3.1** The Owner may, without cause, order the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work, in whole or in part for such period of time as the Owner may determine.

**§ 14.3.2** The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted for increases in the cost and time caused by suspension, delay, or interruption under Section 14.3.1. Adjustment of the Contract Sum shall include profit. No adjustment shall be made to the extent

- .1 that performance is, was, or would have been, so suspended, delayed, or interrupted, by another cause for which the Contractor is responsible; or
- .2 that an equitable adjustment is made or denied under another provision of the Contract.

#### **§ 14.4 Termination by the Owner for Convenience**

**§ 14.4.1** The Owner may, at any time, terminate the Contract for the Owner's convenience and without cause.

**§ 14.4.2** Upon receipt of notice from the Owner of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall

- .1 cease operations as directed by the Owner in the notice;
- .2 take actions necessary, or that the Owner may direct, for the protection and preservation of the Work; and
- .3 except for Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of termination stated in the notice, terminate all existing subcontracts and purchase orders and enter into no further subcontracts and purchase orders.

**§ 14.4.3** In case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Owner shall pay the Contractor for Work properly executed; costs incurred by reason of the termination, including costs attributable to termination of Subcontracts; and the termination fee, if any, set forth in the Agreement.

### **ARTICLE 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**

#### **§ 15.1 Claims**

##### **§ 15.1.1 Definition**

A Claim is a demand or assertion by one of the parties seeking, as a matter of right, payment of money, a change in the Contract Time, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party making the Claim. This Section 15.1.1 does not require the Owner to file a Claim in order to impose liquidated damages in accordance with the Contract Documents.

##### **§ 15.1.2 Time Limits on Claims**

The Owner and Contractor shall commence all Claims and causes of action against the other and arising out of or related to the Contract, whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, in accordance with the requirements of the binding dispute resolution method selected in the Agreement and within the period specified by applicable law, but in any case not more than 10 years after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work. The Owner and Contractor waive all Claims and causes of action not commenced in accordance with this Section 15.1.2.

##### **§ 15.1.3 Notice of Claims**

**§ 15.1.3.1** Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered prior to expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party and to the Initial Decision Maker with a copy sent to the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker. Claims by either party under this Section 15.1.3.1 shall be initiated within 21 days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within 21 days after the claimant first recognizes the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later.

**§ 15.1.3.2** Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party. In such event, no decision by the Initial Decision Maker is required.

**§ 15.1.4 Continuing Contract Performance**

**§ 15.1.4.1** Pending final resolution of a Claim, except as otherwise agreed in writing or as provided in Section 9.7 and Article 14, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the Owner shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 15.1.4.2** The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted in accordance with the Initial Decision Maker's decision, subject to the right of either party to proceed in accordance with this Article 15. The Architect will issue Certificates for Payment in accordance with the decision of the Initial Decision Maker.

**§ 15.1.5 Claims for Additional Cost**

If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Sum, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given before proceeding to execute the portion of the Work that is the subject of the Claim. Prior notice is not required for Claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property arising under Section 10.4.

**§ 15.1.6 Claims for Additional Time**

**§ 15.1.6.1** If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given. The Contractor's Claim shall include an estimate of cost and of probable effect of delay on progress of the Work. In the case of a continuing delay, only one Claim is necessary.

**§ 15.1.6.2** If adverse weather conditions are the basis for a Claim for additional time, such Claim shall be documented by data substantiating that weather conditions were abnormal for the period of time, could not have been reasonably anticipated, and had an adverse effect on the scheduled construction.

**§ 15.1.7 Waiver of Claims for Consequential Damages**

The Contractor and Owner waive Claims against each other for consequential damages arising out of or relating to this Contract. This mutual waiver includes

- .1 damages incurred by the Owner for rental expenses, for losses of use, income, profit, financing, business and reputation, and for loss of management or employee productivity or of the services of such persons; and
- .2 damages incurred by the Contractor for principal office expenses including the compensation of personnel stationed there, for losses of financing, business and reputation, and for loss of profit, except anticipated profit arising directly from the Work.

This mutual waiver is applicable, without limitation, to all consequential damages due to either party's termination in accordance with Article 14. Nothing contained in this Section 15.1.7 shall be deemed to preclude assessment of liquidated damages, when applicable, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 15.2 Initial Decision**

**§ 15.2.1** Claims, excluding those where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2 or arising under Sections 10.3, 10.4, and 11.5, shall be referred to the Initial Decision Maker for initial decision. The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker, unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement. Except for those Claims excluded by this Section 15.2.1, an initial decision shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation of any Claim. If an initial decision has not been rendered within 30 days after the Claim has been referred to the Initial Decision Maker, the party asserting the Claim may demand mediation and binding dispute resolution without a decision having been rendered. Unless the Initial Decision Maker and all affected parties agree, the Initial Decision Maker will not decide disputes between the Contractor and persons or entities other than the Owner.

**§ 15.2.2** The Initial Decision Maker will review Claims and within ten days of the receipt of a Claim take one or more of the following actions: (1) request additional supporting data from the claimant or a response with supporting data from the other party, (2) reject the Claim in whole or in part, (3) approve the Claim, (4) suggest a compromise, or (5) advise the parties that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim if the Initial Decision Maker lacks sufficient information to evaluate the merits of the Claim or if the Initial Decision Maker concludes that, in the

Init.

Initial Decision Maker's sole discretion, it would be inappropriate for the Initial Decision Maker to resolve the Claim.

**§ 15.2.3** In evaluating Claims, the Initial Decision Maker may, but shall not be obligated to, consult with or seek information from either party or from persons with special knowledge or expertise who may assist the Initial Decision Maker in rendering a decision. The Initial Decision Maker may request the Owner to authorize retention of such persons at the Owner's expense.

**§ 15.2.4** If the Initial Decision Maker requests a party to provide a response to a Claim or to furnish additional supporting data, such party shall respond, within ten days after receipt of the request, and shall either (1) provide a response on the requested supporting data, (2) advise the Initial Decision Maker when the response or supporting data will be furnished, or (3) advise the Initial Decision Maker that no supporting data will be furnished. Upon receipt of the response or supporting data, if any, the Initial Decision Maker will either reject or approve the Claim in whole or in part.

**§ 15.2.5** The Initial Decision Maker will render an initial decision approving or rejecting the Claim, or indicating that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim. This initial decision shall (1) be in writing; (2) state the reasons therefor; and (3) notify the parties and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker, of any change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both. The initial decision shall be final and binding on the parties but subject to mediation and, if the parties fail to resolve their dispute through mediation, to binding dispute resolution.

**§ 15.2.6** Either party may file for mediation of an initial decision at any time, subject to the terms of Section 15.2.6.1.

**§ 15.2.6.1** Either party may, within 30 days from the date of receipt of an initial decision, demand in writing that the other party file for mediation. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for mediation within 30 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to mediate or pursue binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

**§ 15.2.7** In the event of a Claim against the Contractor, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy.

**§ 15.2.8** If a Claim relates to or is the subject of a mechanic's lien, the party asserting such Claim may proceed in accordance with applicable law to comply with the lien notice or filing deadlines.

### **§ 15.3 Mediation**

**§ 15.3.1** Claims, disputes, or other matters in controversy arising out of or related to the Contract, except those waived as provided for in Sections 9.10.4, 9.10.5, and 15.1.7, shall be subject to mediation as a condition precedent to binding dispute resolution.

**§ 15.3.2** The parties shall endeavor to resolve their Claims by mediation which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Mediation Procedures in effect on the date of the Agreement. A request for mediation shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the mediation. The request may be made concurrently with the filing of binding dispute resolution proceedings but, in such event, mediation shall proceed in advance of binding dispute resolution proceedings, which shall be stayed pending mediation for a period of 60 days from the date of filing, unless stayed for a longer period by agreement of the parties or court order. If an arbitration is stayed pursuant to this Section 15.3.2, the parties may nonetheless proceed to the selection of the arbitrator(s) and agree upon a schedule for later proceedings.

**§ 15.3.3** Either party may, within 30 days from the date that mediation has been concluded without resolution of the dispute or 60 days after mediation has been demanded without resolution of the dispute, demand in writing that the other party file for binding dispute resolution. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for binding dispute resolution within 60 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

**§ 15.3.4** The parties shall share the mediator's fee and any filing fees equally. The mediation shall be held in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. Agreements reached in mediation shall be enforceable as settlement agreements in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

**§ 15.4 Arbitration**

**§ 15.4.1** If the parties have selected arbitration as the method for binding dispute resolution in the Agreement, any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation shall be subject to arbitration which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Arbitration Rules in effect on the date of the Agreement. The Arbitration shall be conducted in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. A demand for arbitration shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the arbitration. The party filing a notice of demand for arbitration must assert in the demand all Claims then known to that party on which arbitration is permitted to be demanded.

**§ 15.4.1.1** A demand for arbitration shall be made no earlier than concurrently with the filing of a request for mediation, but in no event shall it be made after the date when the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim would be barred by the applicable statute of limitations. For statute of limitations purposes, receipt of a written demand for arbitration by the person or entity administering the arbitration shall constitute the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim.

**§ 15.4.2** The award rendered by the arbitrator or arbitrators shall be final, and judgment may be entered upon it in accordance with applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

**§ 15.4.3** The foregoing agreement to arbitrate and other agreements to arbitrate with an additional person or entity duly consented to by parties to the Agreement, shall be specifically enforceable under applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

**§ 15.4.4 Consolidation or Joinder**

**§ 15.4.4.1** Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may consolidate an arbitration conducted under this Agreement with any other arbitration to which it is a party provided that (1) the arbitration agreement governing the other arbitration permits consolidation, (2) the arbitrations to be consolidated substantially involve common questions of law or fact, and (3) the arbitrations employ materially similar procedural rules and methods for selecting arbitrator(s).

**§ 15.4.4.2** Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may include by joinder persons or entities substantially involved in a common question of law or fact whose presence is required if complete relief is to be accorded in arbitration, provided that the party sought to be joined consents in writing to such joinder. Consent to arbitration involving an additional person or entity shall not constitute consent to arbitration of any claim, dispute or other matter in question not described in the written consent.

**§ 15.4.4.3** The Owner and Contractor grant to any person or entity made a party to an arbitration conducted under this Section 15.4, whether by joinder or consolidation, the same rights of joinder and consolidation as those of the Owner and Contractor under this Agreement.

## **Additions and Deletions Report for** **AIA® Document A201™ – 2017**

This Additions and Deletions Report, as defined on page 1 of the associated document, reproduces below all text the author has added to the standard form AIA document in order to complete it, as well as any text the author may have added to or deleted from the original AIA text. Added text is shown underlined. Deleted text is indicated with a horizontal line through the original AIA text.

Note: This Additions and Deletions Report is provided for information purposes only and is not incorporated into or constitute any part of the associated AIA document. This Additions and Deletions Report and its associated document were generated simultaneously by AIA software at 12:32:10 ET on 03/19/2020.

### **PAGE 1**

Health Life Safety Work: Building Addition  
1502 East US Highway 136  
Table Grove, IL 61482

...

V.I.T CUSD #2  
1502 East US Highway 136  
Table Grove, IL 61482

...

Architechnics, Inc.  
510 Maine Street  
Quincy, IL 62301

## **Certification of Document's Authenticity**

**AIA® Document D401™ – 2003**

I, Todd J. Moore, hereby certify, to the best of my knowledge, information and belief, that I created the attached final document simultaneously with its associated Additions and Deletions Report and this certification at 12:32:10 ET on 03/19/2020 under Order No. 6184970010 from AIA Contract Documents software and that in preparing the attached final document I made no changes to the original text of AIA® Document A201™ - 2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, as published by the AIA in its software, other than those additions and deletions shown in the associated Additions and Deletions Report.

(Signed)

(Title)

(Dated)

**SECTION 00 7300  
SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS**

**1. PRECEDENCE OF SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS**

These Supplementary General Conditions take precedence over the GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT FOR CONSTRUCTION, AIA Document A201-2017, as hereinafter stated.

**2. MODIFICATIONS DELETIONS AND ADDITIONS**

The following supplements modify, delete from, and/or add to the General Conditions.

- A. Articles, or portions thereof, which are not specifically modified, deleted, or superseded hereby, remain in full effect.

**3. DEFINITION OF TERMS** - Where used in any of the Contract Documents, the following meaning will be given to terms herein defined.

- A. Contract/Agreement - Standard Form of Agreement between Contractor and Owner for the Construction of Buildings, AIA Form A101-2017, current edition.
- B. Contractor - The term "Contractor", as used in the Contract Documents, shall refer to the Person or Firm named in the Contract/Agreement for the specific work involved. Only one contractor is recognized as a party to the contract. His/Her is the sole responsibility for the proper execution of the work stated in the Contract/Agreement.
- C. General Contractor - The term "General Contractor" shall mean the Contractor for Complete Construction, or the Contractor for General Construction Work (where no Contractor for Complete Construction is involved in the project).
- D. The term "Product" includes materials, systems, and equipment.
- E. The terms "Approved", "Required", "As Directed", etc. are interpreted and will be taken to mean "to the satisfaction of the Architect".
- F. Where the word "Shall" appears it is to be interpreted to mean "Must - Mandatory".
- G. The term "Similar" means in its general sense and not necessarily identical.

**4. WARRANTY**

- A. Refer to § 3.5 of the General Conditions, add:

Contractor or his Sureties shall remedy any defects in the work and pay for all damages to other work resulting therefrom which may appear within a period of one (1) year of the date of substantial completion as defined in the General Conditions. Neither the final certificate for payment nor the partial use by the Owner will relieve the Contractor or his Sureties of liability for faulty workmanship or materials. All guarantee periods specified shall begin with the date of substantial completion and shall be submitted to Architect together with all lien releases from all subcontractors and major material suppliers and with final lien release from prime contractor at time final payment application is made. This guarantee is not Owner's exclusive remedy but is in addition to any other rights or



remedies of Owner.

**5. PERMITS, FEES, NOTICES, AND COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS**

A. Refer to § 3.7.1 of the General Conditions, add:

Each individual contractor shall obtain and pay for all permits, licenses, franchises, and consents required by law or necessary to perform his/her portion of the work, and shall pay for all inspections required thereby.

**6. ALLOWANCES**

A. Refer to § 3.8 of the General Conditions, add:

If the value of the selected product or systems differs from the allowance value provided in this section, a Contract Change will be issued to reconcile the difference (addition or deduction) in an amount equal to the difference plus 10% of the difference.

**7. SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES**

A. Refer to § 3.12 of the General Conditions, add:

3.12.11 Unless otherwise specified, a minimum of five (5) hard copies or clear, legible and stamped digital "pdf" copies will be required and shall be forwarded to the Architect for review only after all details and dimensions have been verified by the Contractor. All copies must bear the approval stamp of the Contractor when they are submitted to Architect for review. Architect will promptly review and return the documents to the Contractor with corrections, comments and/or color and finish selections as may be required.

3.12.12 Any deviation in shop drawings from the requirements of the contract documents must be brought to Architect's attention in writing at time shop drawings are submitted for his review. Judgment on acceptance of the deviation will be made between the Architect and Owner when shop drawings are returned to the Contractor.

3.12.13 It shall be expressly understood the Architect does not "approve" shop drawings. The Architect "reviews" shop drawings approved by the Contractor. Responsibility for approval of all shop drawings and other submittals rests fully with the Contractor.

**8. CLEANING UP**

A. Refer to § 3.15 of the General Conditions, add:

§ 3.15.3 All contractors shall store apparatus, materials, supplies, and equipment in such orderly fashion and in designated storage areas at the site of the work as will not unduly interfere with the progress of work of any other contractor.

§ 3.15.4 Final Cleaning - Just prior to delivery of building and site to Owner, the General Contractor shall thoroughly clean the project area including: wash all windows, vacuum carpeting, clean floor tile, wipe off all fixtures and equipment, and provide clean filters for all air handling equipment. He shall also clean site of all debris and excess construction materials and equipment.

**9. APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT**

- A. Refer to § 9.3 of the General Conditions, add:

§ 9.3.7 Applications for payment shall be made on Application and Certificate for Payment form, AIA Document G702 with Continuation Sheets as necessary, AIA Document G703. In making such applications for payment, a retainage of ten percent (10%) of the estimated amounts of completed work and stored materials shall be applied until the contract work has been completed.

**10. SAFETY OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**

- A. Refer to paragraph § 10.2 of the General Conditions, add:

§ 10.2.9 Protections - Contractor shall be responsible for insuring that each particular subcontractor provides adequate shoring and bracing of all walls, structural frame and other building elements until all elements are secured with final connections and anchorage. Bracing shall be adequate to withstand heavy gusts of wind and shall be cross tied for protection from all directions. Bracing shall remain in place until sufficient cross-walls, permanent floors and/or roof structure is in place to fully stabilize the individual building elements.

**11. ADDITIONAL CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS**

This document supplements the contract and any other contracts or agreements now or hereafter entered into between Owner and the Contractor or Supplier. Should any conflict exist between any separate contract or agreement and this paragraph, this paragraph shall apply. The provisions of this supplement are intended to apply, however, only to the extent required or contemplated by laws, rules or regulations.

The following provisions shall apply if and to the extent required by law:

- A. BIDDING PRACTICES: Pursuant to Section 33E-11(a) of the Illinois Criminal Code (720 Illinois Compiled Statutes 5/33E 11(a)), Contractor or Supplier certifies that neither Contractor or Supplier, nor any agent or employee thereof, is barred from contracting with any unit of State or local government as a result of a violation of either Section 33E-3 or Section 33E-4 of said Code (720 Illinois Compiled Statutes 5/33E-3, 5/33E-4). Section 33E-3 pertains to the offense of bid-rigging and Section 33E-4 pertains to the offense of bid rotating.
- B. BRIBERY CERTIFICATION: Contractor or Supplier certifies that neither Contractor or Supplier nor any agent or employee thereof has been convicted of bribery or attempting to bribe an officer or employee of the State of Illinois or any other state in that officer or employee's official capacity, or has made an admission of guilt of such conduct which is a matter of record but has not been prosecuted for such conduct. See 30 Illinois Compiled Statutes 505/10.1.
- C. CONFLICTS OF INTEREST: Contractor or Supplier agrees to comply with those provisions established by law pertaining to conflicts of interest. Contractor or Supplier certifies that Contractor or Supplier is unaware of any violation of any laws pertaining to interest in contracts with respect to this contract.

D. DISCRIMINATION

1. Unlawful Discrimination: Contractor or Supplier agrees not to engage in or commit unlawful discrimination as that term is used in the Illinois Human Rights Act (775 Illinois Compiled Statutes 5/1-101 et seq.) or other applicable statutes, laws, rules or regulations and to otherwise comply with the requirements of said Act. This shall include but not be limited to, refraining from unlawful discrimination and undertaking affirmative action to assure equality of employment opportunity and eliminate the effects of past discrimination as required by Section 2-105(A) of said Act (775 Illinois Compiled Statutes 5/2-105(A)). Contractor or Supplier further agreed to comply with the Illinois Public Works Employment Discrimination Act (775 Illinois Compiled Statutes 10/0.01 et seq.).
2. Sexual Harassment: Pursuant to Section 2-105 of the Illinois Human Rights Act (775 Illinois Compiled Statutes 5/2-105(A)) Contractor or Supplier agrees to have a written sexual harassment policy that includes, at a minimum, the following information: (i) the illegality of sexual harassment; (ii) the definition of sexual harassment under State law; (iii) a description of sexual harassment, utilizing examples; (iv) the Contractor's or Supplier's internal complaint process including penalties; (v) the legal recourse, investigative and complaint process available through the Illinois Department of Human Rights and the Human Rights Commission; (vi) directions on how to contact the Department and Commission; and (vii) protection against retaliation as provided by the Act. A copy of the policy shall be provided to Owner and Architect/Engineer and the Department upon request.
3. Dues to Clubs which Discriminate: Contractor or Supplier certifies that it is not prohibited from receiving any award or grant because it pays dues or fees on behalf of its employees or agents or subsidizes or otherwise reimburses them for payment of their dues and fees to any club which unlawfully discriminates contrary to the Illinois Discriminatory Club Act (775 Illinois Compiled Statutes 25/0.01 et seq.).

E. EDUCATIONAL LOANS Contractor or Supplier certifies that Contractor or Supplier is not in default on an educational loan as defined by the Illinois Educational Loan Default Act (5 Illinois Compiled Statutes 385/0.01 et seq.)

F. DRUG FREE WORKPLACE: To the extent that the contract is subject to the Illinois Drug Free Workplace Act (30 Illinois Compiled Statutes 580/1 et seq.), Contractor or Supplier certifies and agrees that Contractor or Supplier will provide a drug free workplace by complying with the terms of said Act, including, but not necessarily limited to, Section 3 of said Act (30 Illinois Compiled Statutes 580/3).

G. SERVICE, MATERIALS, AND EQUIPMENT All iron and steel products which are to be incorporated into public work projects shall be domestically manufactured or produced and fabricated.(30 Illinois Compiled Statutes 565 et seq.) The Contractor shall obtain from the iron or steel producer and/or fabricator, in addition to the mill analysis, a certification that all iron or steel materials meet these domestic source requirements.

**END OF SECTION 00 7300**

**SECTION 00 7334**  
**REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBSTANCE ABUSE PREVENTION PROGRAM**

Before any contractor commences work on a public works program, the contractor shall have in place a written program that meets or exceeds the requirement in "820 ILCS 265, Public Act 95-635, Substance Abuse Prevention on Public Works Projects Act", or shall have a collective bargaining agreement in effect dealing with the subject matter in the above Act.

The prime contractor and all subcontractors shall file with the Owner, a copy of the "Substance Abuse Prevention Program" along with a cover letter certifying their program meets or exceeds the requirements of the Act, or a letter certifying that the prime contractor and subcontractors have a collective bargaining agreement in effect dealing with the subject matter of the above Act.

**END OF SECTION 00 7334**

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**SECTION 00 7343  
WAGE RATE REQUIREMENTS**

The successful bidder and his subcontractors will be required to pay not less than the Prevailing Wage Rate for workmen engaged in work under this contract, with the provisions of an act of the General Assembly of the State of Illinois entitled "An Act Regulating the Wage of Laborers, Mechanics, and other workmen employed in any public works by the State, County, City or any Public Body, or any Political Subdivision or by anyone under contract for public works," by act approved July 11, 1957, as amended. Attached to and made part of these Contract Documents is the current prevailing wage rate decision that will govern during the proposed work, and includes hourly rates, overtime rates, and all required fringe benefit rates.

The successful bidder and his subcontractors will be required to conform to provisions of Chapter 48, Illinois Revised Statutes, Paragraphs 2201 through 2207 "Employment of Illinois Workers on Public Works Projects" for workmen engaged in work under this contract.

It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor and any subcontractors to allow the City of Table Grove, the Illinois Department of Labor, and any authorized representative of any government agency involved in the funding of this project, access to and the right to examine all records, books, papers, payrolls, or documents related to this construction project. This right shall extend from the time of execution of the contract through the entire time period of the work, and ending three (3) years after the final pay estimate is disbursed.

Certified payroll records shall be submitted on a monthly basis to the public body in charge of the construction project, along with a statement affirming that such records are true and accurate, that the wages paid to each worker are not less than the required prevailing rate and that the contractor is aware that filing records he or she knows to be false is a Class B misdemeanor.

If the Illinois Department of Labor revises during the term of this contract the prevailing rate of hourly wages to be paid in the City of Table Grove in Fulton County, the revised rate as provided by the V.I.T. Community Unit School District No. 2 to the Contractor shall apply to this contract.

For the current Wage Rate Requirements, go to website:

<https://www2.illinois.gov/idol/Laws-Rules/CONMED/Pages/prevailing-wage-rates.aspx>

**END OF SECTION 00 7343**

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**SECTION 01 1000  
SUMMARY OF WORK**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:

1. Project information.
2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
3. Work under separate contracts.
4. Access to site.
5. Work restrictions.
6. Specification and Drawing conventions.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 5000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.

**1.2 PROJECT INFORMATION**

A. Project Identification: **Health Life Safety Work: Building Addition**

1. Project Locations: **1502 East U.S. Highway 136, Table Grove, Illinois 61482**

B. Owner: **V.I.T. Community Unit School District #2, 1502 East U.S. Highway 136, Table Grove, Illinois 61482**

1. Owner's Representative: **Matt Klaska, Superintendent 309-758-5138.**

C. Architect / Engineer: **Architechnics, 510 Maine Street, Quincy, Illinois 62301**

**1.3 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and consists of the following:

1. Building addition at existing elementary school.

B. Type of Contract: Single Stipulated Lump Sum

1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.



**1.4 WORK UNDER SEPARATE CONTRACTS**

- A. None

**1.5 ACCESS TO SITE**

- A. Refer to Section 00 2115, Supplementary Instructions to Bidders

**1.6 WORK RESTRICTIONS**

- A. Refer to Section 00 2115, Supplementary Instructions to Bidders

**1.7 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS**

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
  - 1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
  - 2. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 1000**

**SECTION 01 1419**  
**USE OF SITE**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Work included: This Section applies to situations in which the Contractor or his representatives including, but not necessarily limited to, suppliers, subcontractors, employees, and field engineers, enter upon the Owner's property.
- B. RELATED WORK
  - 1. Documents affecting work of this Section include, but are not necessarily limited to, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Sections in Division 1 of these Specifications.

**1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintain an accurate record of the names and identification of all persons entering upon the Owner's property in connection with the Work of this Contract, including times of entering and times of leaving. Submit a copy of the record to the Owner upon request.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Promptly upon award of the Contract, notify all pertinent personnel regarding requirements of this Section.
- B. Require that all personnel who will enter upon the Owner's property certify their awareness of and familiarity with the requirements of this Section.

**1.4 TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES**

- A. Truck and equipment access:
  - 1. To avoid traffic conflict with vehicles of the Owner's employees and customers, and to avoid over-loading of streets and driveways elsewhere on the Owner's property, limit the access of trucks and equipment to the minimum required to complete the work.
- B. Contractor's vehicles:
  - 1. Require Contractor's vehicles, vehicles belonging to employees of the Contractor, and all other vehicles entering upon the Owner's property in performance of the Work of the Contract, to use only the designated Contractor's Access Route.
  - 2. Do not permit such vehicles to park on any street or other area of the Owner's property except in the designated area shown on the plans.

**1.5 SECURITY**

- A. Restrict the access of all persons entering upon the Owner's property in connection with the Work to the Access Route and to the actual site of the Work.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 1419**

**SECTION 01 2500  
SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
  - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
  - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner – Not Permitted.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
    - b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
    - c. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
    - d. Samples, where applicable or requested.
    - e. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
    - f. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
    - g. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
    - h. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.

- i. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
  - j. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
- 2. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within five days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within ten days of receipt of request, or ten days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
  - a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
  - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

#### **1.5 PROCEDURES**

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

#### **1.6 SUBSTITUTIONS**

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
  - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
    - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
    - b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
    - c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
    - d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
    - f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
    - g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.

- h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

B. Substitutions for Convenience: Not allowed.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 2500**

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**SECTION 01 2600  
CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.

**1.2 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK**

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710.

**1.3 PROPOSAL REQUESTS**

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within 20 days, when not otherwise specified, after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
    - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to the Architect.
  - 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
  - 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.



3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
6. Comply with requirements in Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.

#### **1.4 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES**

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701.

#### **1.5 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE**

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
  1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
  1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

#### **END OF SECTION 01 2600**

**SECTION 01 2900  
PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.

**1.2 SCHEDULE OF VALUES**

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:
    - a. Application for Payment forms with continuation sheets.
  - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
  - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
    - a. Project name and location.
    - b. Name of Architect.
    - c. Architect's project number.
    - d. Contractor's name and address.
    - e. Date of submittal.
  - 2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
  - 3. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
    - a. Related Specification Section or Division.
    - b. Description of the Work.
    - c. Name of subcontractor.
    - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
    - e. Name of supplier.
    - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
    - g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent.

4. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with Project Manual table of contents. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts, where applicable.
5. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
6. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
  - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site. If specified, include evidence of insurance or bonded warehousing.
7. Provide separate line items in the schedule of values for initial cost of materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
8. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
9. Each item in the schedule of values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.
  - a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the schedule of values or distributed as general overhead expense, at Contractor's option.
10. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the schedule of values before the next Applications for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

### **1.3 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT**

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
  1. Initial Application for Payment, Application for Payment at time of Substantial Completion, and final Application for Payment involve additional requirements.
- B. Payment Application Times: Submit Application for Payment to Architect by the 1<sup>st</sup> day of the month. The period covered by each Application for Payment is one month, ending on the last day of the month.
- C. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
- D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
  1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
  2. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.

- E. Transmittal: Submit 3 signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
  - 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- F. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.
  - 1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
  - 2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
  - 3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
  - 4. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
  - 5. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.
- G. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
  - 1. List of subcontractors.
  - 2. Schedule of values.
  - 3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
  - 4. Products list
  - 5. Initial progress report.
  - 6. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
  - 7. Performance and payment bonds as applicable.
- H. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
  - 1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
  - 2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- I. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  - 2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  - 3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
  - 4. AIA Document G706, "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims."
  - 5. AIA Document G706A, "Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens."
  - 6. AIA Document G707, "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."
  - 7. Evidence that claims have been settled.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 2900**

**SECTION 01 3100  
PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Coordination drawings.
  - 2. RFIs.
  - 3. Project meetings.

**1.3 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES**

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
  - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  - 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  - 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and scheduled activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
  - 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
  - 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
  - 5. Progress meetings.
  - 6. Preinstallation conferences.
  - 7. Project closeout activities.
  - 8. Startup and adjustment of systems.

#### **1.4 COORDINATION DRAWINGS**

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
    - b. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternative sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
  2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to accommodate layout of light fixtures and other components indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
  3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
  4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
  5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
  6. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that in general the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility.

#### **1.5 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)**

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, and after Contractor has thoroughly reviewed the documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
1. Architect will return without response those RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor.
  2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.

- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
1. Project name.
  2. Project number.
  3. Date.
  4. Name of Contractor.
  5. Name of Architect.
  6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
  7. RFI subject.
  8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
  9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
  11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
  12. Contractor's signature.
  13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
- C. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
    - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
    - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
    - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
    - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
  2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt by Architect of additional information.
  3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 01 2600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
    - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect and Construction Manager in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response and before proceeding with the instructions indicated in the RFI response.
- D. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log monthly. Include the following:
1. Project name.
  2. Name and address of Contractor.
  3. Name and address of Architect.
  4. RFI number including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.



5. RFI description.
  6. Date the RFI was submitted.
  7. Date Architect's response was received.
- E. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.

## **1.6 PROJECT MEETINGS**

- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
    - a. Responsibilities and personnel assignments.
    - b. Tentative construction schedule.
    - c. Phasing.
    - d. Critical work sequencing and long lead items.
    - e. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
    - f. Lines of communications.
    - g. Use of web-based Project software.
    - h. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
    - i. Procedures for RFIs.
    - j. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
    - k. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
    - l. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
    - m. Submittal procedures.
    - n. Sustainable design requirements.
    - o. Preparation of Record Documents.
    - p. Use of the premises.
    - q. Work restrictions.
    - r. Working hours.
    - s. Owner's occupancy requirements.
    - t. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
    - u. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
    - v. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
    - w. Construction waste management and recycling.
    - x. Parking availability.
    - y. Office, work, and storage areas.
    - z. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
    - aa. First aid.
    - bb. Security.
    - cc. Progress cleaning.

3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity when required by other sections and when required for coordination with other construction.
1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
  2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
    - a. Contract Documents.
    - b. Options.
    - c. Related RFIs.
    - d. Related Change Orders.
    - e. Purchases.
    - f. Deliveries.
    - g. Submittals.
    - h. Sustainable design requirements.
    - i. Review of mockups.
    - j. Possible conflicts.
    - k. Compatibility requirements.
    - l. Time schedules.
    - m. Weather limitations.
    - n. Manufacturer's written instructions.
    - o. Warranty requirements.
    - p. Compatibility of materials.
    - q. Acceptability of substrates.
    - r. Temporary facilities and controls.
    - s. Space and access limitations.
    - t. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - u. Testing and inspecting requirements.
    - v. Installation procedures.
    - w. Coordination with other work.
    - x. Required performance results.
    - y. Protection of adjacent work.
    - z. Protection of construction and personnel.
  3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
  4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
  5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at regular intervals.
1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
  2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in

planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.

3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
  - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
    - 1) Review schedule for next period.
  - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
    - 1) Interface requirements.
    - 2) Sequence of operations.
    - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
    - 4) Status of submittals.
    - 5) Status of sustainable design documentation.
    - 6) Deliveries.
    - 7) Off-site fabrication.
    - 8) Access.
    - 9) Site use.
    - 10) Temporary facilities and controls.
    - 11) Progress cleaning.
    - 12) Quality and work standards.
    - 13) Status of correction of deficient items.
    - 14) Field observations.
    - 15) Status of RFIs.
    - 16) Status of Proposal Requests.
    - 17) Pending changes.
    - 18) Status of Change Orders.
    - 19) Pending claims and disputes.
    - 20) Documentation of information for payment requests.
4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
  - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 3100**

**SECTION 01 3300  
SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Submittal schedule requirements.
  - 2. Administrative and procedural requirements for submittals.

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."

**1.3 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE**

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit, as an action submittal, a list of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.

**1.4 SUBMITTAL FORMATS**

- A. Submittal Information: Include the following information in each submittal:
  - 1. Project name.
  - 2. Date.
  - 3. Name of Architect/Engineer.
  - 4. Name of Contractor.
  - 5. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
  - 6. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
  - 7. Unique submittal number, including revision identifier. Include Specification Section number with sequential alphanumeric identifier; and alphanumeric suffix for resubmittals.
  - 8. Category and type of submittal.
  - 9. Submittal purpose and description.
  - 10. Number and title of Specification Section, with paragraph number and generic name for each of multiple items.

11. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  12. Indication of full or partial submittal.
  13. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
  14. Other necessary identification.
  15. Remarks.
  16. Signature of transmitter.
- B. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- C. Deviations and Additional Information: On each submittal, clearly indicate deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations; include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached separate sheet.
- D. Paper Submittals:
1. Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal item for identification; include name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
  2. Provide a space approximately 6 by 8 inches on label or beside title block to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
  3. Action Submittals: Submit one paper copy of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return one electronic copy.
  4. Informational Submittals: Submit one paper copy of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
  5. Transmittal for Submittals: Assemble each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using transmittal form.
- E. PDF Submittals: Prepare submittals as PDF package, incorporating complete information into each PDF file. Name PDF file with submittal number.
- F. Submittals for Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals as PDF files, or other format indicated by Project software website.

## **1.5 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

- A. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
1. Email: Prepare submittals as PDF package, and transmit to Architect by sending via email. Include PDF transmittal form. Include information in email subject line as requested by Architect.
  2. Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
  3. Paper: Prepare submittals in paper form, and deliver to Architect.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.

2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
  3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
  2. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
- D. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
- E. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- F. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

## **1.6 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are unsuitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Standard color charts.
    - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - h. Availability and delivery time information.
  4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
    - a. Wiring diagrams that show factory-installed wiring.
    - b. Printed performance curves.
    - c. Operational range diagrams.
    - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
  5. Submit Product Data before Shop Drawings, and before or concurrent with Samples.

- B. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Identification of products.
    - b. Schedules.
    - c. Compliance with specified standards.
    - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
    - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
  2. Paper Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size Drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches, but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.
- C. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other materials.
1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  2. Identification: Permanently attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Project name and submittal number.
    - b. Generic description of Sample.
    - c. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - d. Sample source.
    - e. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
    - f. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
  3. Email Transmittal: Provide PDF transmittal. Include digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and identification information for record.
  4. Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
  5. Paper Transmittal: Include paper transmittal including complete submittal information indicated.
  6. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
    - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
    - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
  7. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.

- a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
8. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
- a. Number of Samples: Submit one set of Samples. Architect will retain one Sample sets.
    - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
    - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- D. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
- E. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- F. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information indicating compliance with indicated performance and design criteria in individual Specification Sections. Include list of assumptions and summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Number each page of submittal.
- G. Certificates:
1. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Submit a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity. Provide a notarized signature where indicated.
  2. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
  3. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
  4. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  5. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  6. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding



Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.

H. Test and Research Reports:

1. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
2. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
3. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
4. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
5. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
6. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
  - a. Name of evaluation organization.
  - b. Date of evaluation.
  - c. Time period when report is in effect.
  - d. Product and manufacturers' names.
  - e. Description of product.
  - f. Test procedures and results.
  - g. Limitations of use.

**1.7 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW**

- A. Action Submittals and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
1. Architect will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.

**1.8 ARCHITECT'S REVIEW**

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it.
1. Paper Submittals: Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action.

- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will be returned by Architect without action.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 3300**

**This page left blank intentionally.**

**SECTION 01 4000  
QUALITY REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 1. Specific quality assurance and control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
  - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
  - 4. Specified test and inspection requirements are not specified in the Section.

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect.
- C. Mockups: Full-size, physical assemblies that are constructed on-site. Mockups are used to verify selections made under sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution, and to review construction, coordination, testing, or operation; they are not Samples.
- D. Laboratory Mockups: Full-size, physical assemblies that are constructed at testing facility to verify performance characteristics.

- E. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed specifically for the Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
- F. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with industry standards.
- G. Source Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source, i.e., plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- H. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- I. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- J. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
  - 1. Using a term such as "carpentry" does not imply that certain construction activities must be performed by accredited or unionized individuals of a corresponding generic name, such as "carpenter." It also does not imply that requirements specified apply exclusively to trades people of the corresponding generic name.
- K. Experienced: When used with an entity, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of 5 previous projects similar in size and scope to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

### **1.3 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer uncertainties and requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this Article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.

- B. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or products that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- F. Specialists: Certain sections of the Specifications require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
  - 1. Requirement for specialists shall not supersede building codes and regulations governing the Work.
- G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
- H. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
  - 1. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
  - 2. Notify Architect 7 days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
  - 3. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
  - 4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
  - 5. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  - 6. Demolish and remove mockups when directed, unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Laboratory Mockups: Comply with requirements of preconstruction testing and those specified in individual Sections in Divisions 02 through 49.

## 1.5 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
  - 1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform.
- B. Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
  - 1. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
    - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
  - 2. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
  - 3. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
  - 4. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
  - 5. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures."
- D. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- E. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
  - 1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  - 2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
  - 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
  - 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
  - 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  - 6. Do not perform any duties of Contractor.

- F. Associated Services: Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
  2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
  4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
  6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
  7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.
- G. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.

#### **1.6 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS**

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, and as follows:
- B. Special Tests and Inspections: Conducted by a qualified testing agency as required by authorities having jurisdiction, as indicated in individual Specification Sections, and as follows:
1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviewing the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
  2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
  4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
  5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
  6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected work.



**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 REPAIR AND PROTECTION**

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
  - 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible.
  - 2. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

**END OF SECTION 01 4000**

**SECTION 01 4100  
REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 – GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Work included:**

1. The Contractor shall comply with applicable provisions of the:
  - a. Illinois State Board of Education, School Code 105 ILCS 5.
  - b. International Building Code, International Fire Code, International Mechanical Code, International Energy Conservation Code 2009 edition
  - c. 2014 National Electrical Code
  - d. 2004 Illinois Plumbing Code
  - e. 1997 Illinois Accessibility Code with 2010 ADAAG updates.
  - f. State of Illinois- State Fire Marshall rules and regulations, NFPA 101, 2000.
  - g. Illinois Environmental Protection Agency Rules and Regulations.
2. The Contractor shall include all items of labor and materials required to meet such codes, regardless of the failure to mention in the Specifications, or to show on the Plans. Where the plans or specifications are in excess of the corresponding requirements, the specifications and plans shall govern.

**B. Permits:**

1. Each individual contractor shall obtain and pay for all permits, licenses, franchises and consents required by law or necessary to perform his/her portion of the work, and shall pay for all inspections required thereby.

**END OF SECTION 01 4100**

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**SECTION 01 5000  
TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.

**1.2 USE CHARGES**

- A. General: Cost or use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Architect/Engineer, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Water Service: By Owner.
- C. Electric Power Service: Electric power from Owner's existing system will be available for use. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES**

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.

**2.2 EQUIPMENT**

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

**END OF SECTION 01 5000**

**SECTION 01 6600  
PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 – GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Work included: Protect products scheduled for use in the Work by means including, but not necessarily limited to, those described in this Section.
- B. Related Work:
  - 1. Documents affecting work of this Section include, but are not necessarily limited to, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Sections in Division 1 of these Specifications.
  - 2. Additional procedures also may be prescribed in other Sections of these Specifications.

**1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Include within the Contractor's quality assurance program such procedures as are required to assure full protection of work and materials.

**1.3 MANUFACTURERS' RECOMMENDATIONS**

- A. Except as otherwise approved by the Architect/Engineer, determines and comply with manufacturers' recommendations on product handling, storage and protection.

**1.4 PACKAGING**

- A. Deliver products to the job site in their manufacturer's original container, with labels intact and legible.
  - 1. Maintain packaged materials with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use.
  - 2. Promptly remove damaged material and unsuitable items from the job site, and promptly replace with material meeting the specified requirements, at no additional cost to the Owner.
- B. The Architect/Engineer may reject as non-complying such material and products that do not bear identification satisfactory to the Architect/Engineer as to manufacturer, grade, quality, and other pertinent information.

**1.5 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect finished surfaces, including jambs and soffits of openings used as passageways, through which equipment and materials are handled.

- B. Provide protection for finished floor surfaces in traffic areas prior to allowing equipment or materials to be moved over such surfaces.
- C. Maintain finished surfaces clean, unmarred , and suitable protected until accepted by the owner.

**1.6 REPAIRS AND REPLACEMENTS**

- A. In event of damage, promptly make replacements and repairs to the approval of the Architect/Engineer and at no additional costs to Owner.
- B. Additional time required to secure replacements and to make repairs will not be considered by the Architect/Engineer to justify an extension in the Contract Time of Completion.

**END OF SECTION 01 6600**

**SECTION 01 7700  
CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
  - 2. Final completion procedures.
  - 3. Warranties.
  - 4. Final cleaning.
  - 5. Repair of the Work.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for additional operation and maintenance manual requirements.
  - 2. Section 01 7839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.

**1.2 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES**

- A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion, complete the following. List items below that are incomplete in request.
  - 1. Prepare a list of items to be completed and corrected (punch list), the value of items on the list, and reasons why the Work is not complete.
  - 2. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
  - 3. Submit specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
  - 4. Obtain and submit releases permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
  - 5. Prepare and submit Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals, Final Completion construction photographs, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
  - 6. Deliver tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items to location designated by Owner. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
  - 7. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
  - 8. Complete startup testing of systems.
  - 9. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
  - 10. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
  - 11. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
  - 12. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.



13. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
14. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.

B. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection for Substantial Completion. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for Final Completion.

### **1.3 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES**

A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting final inspection for determining date of Final Completion, complete the following:

1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures."
2. Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. The certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
3. Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
4. Submit pest-control final inspection report and warranty.
5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training videotapes.

B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection for acceptance. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

### **1.4 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)**

A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.

1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first.
2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.

## **1.5 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES**

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where warranties are indicated to commence on dates other than date of Substantial Completion, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
- C. Warranties in Paper Form:
  - 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
- D. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 FINAL CLEANING**

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a portion of Project:
    - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
    - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
    - c. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
    - d. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.

- e. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
- f. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
- g. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; shampoo if visible soil or stains remain.
- h. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Replace chipped or broken glass and other damaged transparent materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
- i. Remove labels that are not permanent.
- j. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred, exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that cannot be satisfactorily repaired or restored or that already show evidence of repair or restoration.

1) Do not paint over "UL" and similar labels, including mechanical and electrical nameplates.

- k. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
- l. Replace parts subject to unusual operating conditions.
- m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
- n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
- o. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency. Replace burned-out bulbs, and those noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.
- p. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.

- C. Comply with safety standards for cleaning. Do not burn waste materials. Do not bury debris or excess materials on Owner's property. Do not discharge volatile, harmful, or dangerous materials into drainage systems. Remove waste materials from Project site and dispose of lawfully.

### **3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK**

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations, before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair, or remove and replace, defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.

**END OF SECTION 01 7700**

**SECTION 01 7823  
OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
  - 1. Maintenance manuals for the care and maintenance of products, materials, and finishes /systems and equipment.
- B. See Divisions 02 through 07 Sections for specific operation and maintenance manual requirements for the Work in those Sections.

**1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Manual: Submit one copy of each manual in final form at least 15 days before final inspection. Architect will return copy with comments within 15 days after final inspection.
  - 1. Correct or modify each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit 3 copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MANUALS, GENERAL**

- A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain a title page, table of contents, and manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Enclose title page in transparent plastic sleeve. Include the following information:
  - 1. Subject matter included in manual.
  - 2. Name and address of Project.
  - 3. Name and address of Owner.
  - 4. Date of submittal.
  - 5. Name, address, and telephone number of Contractor.
  - 6. Name and address of Architect.
  - 7. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.

- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
1. Binders: Heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
    - a. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
  2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
  3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software diskettes for computerized electronic equipment.
  4. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
    - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
    - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

## **2.2 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual.
- C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Product name and model number.
  2. Manufacturer's name.
  3. Color, pattern, and texture.
  4. Material and chemical composition.
  5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and inspection procedures, types of cleaning agents, methods of cleaning, schedule for cleaning and maintenance, and repair instructions.
- E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.

- F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

## **2.3 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

- A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual.
- C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including maintenance instructions, drawings and diagrams for maintenance, nomenclature of parts and components, and recommended spare parts for each component part or piece of equipment:
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include test and inspection instructions, troubleshooting guide, disassembly instructions, and adjusting instructions, and demonstration and training videotape if available, that detail essential maintenance procedures:
- E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION**

- A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- B. Comply with Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

## **END OF SECTION 01 7823**

**This page left intentionally blank.**

**SECTION 01 7839  
PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
  - 1. Record Drawings.
  - 2. Record Specifications.
  - 3. Record Product Data.

**1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set(s) of marked-up record prints.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit one paper copy of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.

**1.3 RECORD DRAWINGS**

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
  - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
    - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
    - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
    - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
    - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
    - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding photographic documentation.
  - 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
    - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
    - c. Depths of foundations.
    - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
    - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
    - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
    - g. Actual equipment locations.



- h. Duct size and routing.
  - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
  - j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
  - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
  - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
  - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
  - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
- 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
  - 4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
  - 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
  - 6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.

#### **1.4 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS**

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
  - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  - 2. Note related Change Orders and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Specifications as paper copy.

#### **1.5 MAINTENANCE OF RECORD DOCUMENTS**

- A. Maintenance of Record Documents: Store record documents in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS – NOT USED**

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION – NOT USED**

### **END OF SECTION 01 7839**

**SECTION 02 4119  
SELECTIVE DEMOLITION**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1000 "Summary" for restrictions on use of the premises, Owner-occupancy requirements, and phasing requirements.
  - 2. Section 01 7300 "Execution" for cutting and patching procedures.

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to Owner ready for reuse.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, prepare for reuse, and reinstall where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Leave existing items that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- E. Dismantle: To remove by disassembling or detaching an item from a surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to the item and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.

**1.3 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP**

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.

**1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
- C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.

- D. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
  - 1. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
- E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- F. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
  - 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

## **1.5 COORDINATION**

- A. Arrange selective demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's operations.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.
- B. Review Project Record Documents of existing construction or other existing condition and hazardous material information provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in Project Record Documents.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Refrigerant: Before starting demolition, remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

### **3.3 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.
- B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
  - 1. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
  - 2. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated on Drawings to be removed.
    - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
    - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material and leave in place.
    - c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
    - d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
    - e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
    - f. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
    - g. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material and leave in place.

### **3.4 PROTECTION**

- A. Temporary Protection: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
  - 1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
  - 2. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
  - 3. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
  - 4. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Section 01 5000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Remove temporary barricades and protections where hazards no longer exist.

### **3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL**

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:

1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
5. Maintain fire watch during and for at least 4 hours after flame-cutting operations.
6. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
7. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
8. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
9. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.

### **3.6 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS**

- A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site
  1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
  2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

### **3.7 CLEANING**

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

**END OF SECTION 02 4119**

## **SECTION 03 1000**

### **CONCRETE FORMING AND ACCESSORIES**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Form-facing material for cast-in-place concrete.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 32 1313 "Concrete Paving" for formwork related to concrete pavement and walks.

##### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Form-Facing Material: Temporary structure or mold for the support of concrete while the concrete is setting and gaining sufficient strength to be self-supporting.
- B. Formwork: The total system of support of freshly placed concrete, including the mold or sheathing that contacts the concrete, as well as supporting members, hardware, and necessary bracing.

##### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each of the following:
  - 1. Exposed surface form-facing material.
  - 2. Concealed surface form-facing material.
  - 3. Void forms.
  - 4. Form ties.
  - 5. Form-release agent.

##### **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For testing and inspection agency.
- B. Research Reports: For insulating concrete forms indicating compliance with International Code Council Acceptance Criteria AC308.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

## **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing and Inspection Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.

## **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Form Liners: Store form liners under cover to protect from sunlight.
- B. Insulating Concrete Forms: Store forms off ground and under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Concrete Formwork: Design, engineer, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, shores, and reshores in accordance with ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads, so that resulting concrete conforms to the required shapes, lines, and dimensions.
  - 1. Design wood panel forms in accordance with APA's "Concrete Forming Design/Construction Guide."
  - 2. Design formwork to limit deflection of form-facing material to 1/240 of center-to-center spacing of supports.
    - a. For architectural concrete specified in Section 03 3300 "Architectural Concrete," limit deflection of form-facing material, studs, and walers to 0.0025 times their respective clear spans (L/400).

### **2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS**

- A. As-Cast Surface Form-Facing Material:
  - 1. Provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces.
  - 2. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
  - 3. Acceptable Materials: As required to comply with Surface Finish designations specified in Section 03 3000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete, and as follows:
    - a. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.
    - b. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
      - 1) APA HDO (high-density overlay).
      - 2) APA MDO (medium-density overlay); mill-release agent treated and edge sealed.
      - 3) APA Structural 1 Plyform, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
      - 4) APA Plyform Class I, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.

- B. Concealed Surface Form-Facing Material: Lumber, plywood, metal, plastic, or another approved material.
  - 1. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- C. Void Forms: Biodegradable paper surface, treated for moisture resistance, structurally sufficient to support weight of plastic concrete and other superimposed loads.

## **2.3 RELATED MATERIALS**

- A. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than 0.022-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
- B. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet, not less than 0.034 inch thick, with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
- C. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.
- D. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.
- E. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
  - 1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
  - 2. Form release agent for form liners shall be acceptable to form liner manufacturer.
- F. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or metal form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
  - 1. Furnish units that leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
  - 2. Furnish ties that, when removed, leave holes no larger than 1 inch in diameter in concrete surface.
  - 3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION OF FORMWORK**

- A. Comply with ACI 301.
- B. Construct formwork, so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117 and to comply with the Surface Finish designations specified in Section 03 3000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete" for as-cast finishes
- C. Limit concrete surface irregularities as follows:



1. Surface Finish-1.0: ACI 117 Class D, 1 inch.
  2. Surface Finish-2.0: ACI 117 Class B, 1/4 inch.
  3. Surface Finish-3.0: ACI 117 Class A, 1/8 inch.
- D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
1. Minimize joints.
  2. Exposed Concrete: Symmetrically align joints in forms.
- E. Construct removable forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces.
1. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast-concrete surfaces.
  2. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
  3. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and other accessories, for easy removal.
- F. Do not use rust-stained, steel, form-facing material.
- G. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces.
1. Provide and secure units to support screed strips
  2. Use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- H. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible.
1. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
  2. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- I. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- J. At construction joints, overlap forms onto previously placed concrete not less than 12 inches.
- K. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work.
1. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
  2. Obtain written approval of Architect prior to forming openings not indicated on Drawings.
- L. Construction and Movement Joints:
1. Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
  2. Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
  3. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
  4. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans.
    - a. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
  5. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
  6. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated on Drawings .

- a. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
- M. Provide temporary ports or openings in formwork where required to facilitate cleaning and inspection.
  - 1. Locate ports and openings in bottom of vertical forms, in inconspicuous location, to allow flushing water to drain.
  - 2. Close temporary ports and openings with tight-fitting panels, flush with inside face of form, and neatly fitted, so joints will not be apparent in exposed concrete surfaces.
- N. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- O. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- P. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS**

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete.
  - 1. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 2. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC 303.
  - 3. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
  - 4. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures, as indicated on Drawings.
  - 5. Clean embedded items immediate prior to concrete placement.

### **3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS**

- A. Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F for 36 hours after placing concrete. Concrete has to be hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations, and curing and protection operations need to be maintained.
  - 1. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that support weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved at least 70 percent of its 28-day design compressive strength.
  - 2. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work.
  - 1. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material are unacceptable for exposed surfaces.

2. Apply new form-release agent.
- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints.
  1. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets.
  2. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

### **3.4 SHORING AND RESHORING INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with ACI 318 and ACI 301 for design, installation, and removal of shoring and reshoring.
  1. Do not remove shoring or reshoring until measurement of slab tolerances is complete.
- B. In multistory construction, extend shoring or reshoring over a sufficient number of stories to distribute loads in such a manner that no floor or member will be excessively loaded or will induce tensile stress in concrete members without sufficient steel reinforcement.
- C. Plan sequence of removal of shores and reshore to avoid damage to concrete. Locate and provide adequate reshoring to support construction without excessive stress or deflection.

### **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
- C. Inspections:
  1. Inspect formwork for shape, location, and dimensions of the concrete member being formed.
  2. Inspect insulating concrete forms for shape, location, and dimensions of the concrete member being formed.

**END OF SECTION 03 1000**

**SECTION 03 2000**  
**CONCRETE REINFORCING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Steel reinforcement bars.
  - 2. Welded-wire reinforcement.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 32 1313 "Concrete Paving" for reinforcing related to concrete pavement and walks.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Each type of steel reinforcement.
  - 2. Epoxy repair coating.
  - 3. Bar supports.
- B. Shop Drawings: Comply with ACI SP-066:
  - 1. Include placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement.
  - 2. Include bar sizes, lengths, materials, grades, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, location of splices, lengths of lap splices, details of mechanical splice couplers, details of welding splices, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.
  - 3. For insulated connection system, indicate general configuration, insulation dimensions, tension bars, compression pads, shear bars, and dimensions.
- C. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to build the structure.
  - 1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Statements: For testing and inspection agency.

- B. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
  - 1. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: CRSI's "Epoxy Coating Plant Certification."
- C. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:
  - 1. Steel Reinforcement:
    - a. For reinforcement to be welded, mill test analysis for chemical composition and carbon equivalent of the steel in accordance with ASTM A706/A706M.
  - 2. Mechanical splice couplers.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

## **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.4/D 1.4M.

## **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage. and to avoid damaging coatings on steel reinforcement.
  - 1. Store reinforcement to avoid contact with earth.
  - 2. Do not allow epoxy-coated reinforcement to be stored outdoors for more than 60 days without being stored under an opaque covering.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 STEEL REINFORCEMENT**

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) , deformed.
- B. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars:
  - 1. Steel Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) , deformed bars.
  - 2. Epoxy Coating: ASTM A775/A775M with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each 12-inch (305-mm) bar length.
- C. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A184/A184M, fabricated from ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) , deformed bars, assembled with clips.
- D. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064/A1064M, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- E. Epoxy-Coated Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A884/A884M, Class A coated, Type 1, plain steel.

## **2.2 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES**

- A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- B. Epoxy-Coated Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), plain-steel bars, ASTM A775/A775M epoxy coated.
- C. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place.
  - 1. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete in accordance with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
    - a. For concrete surfaces exposed to view, where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire, all-plastic bar supports, or CRSI Class 2 stainless steel bar supports.
    - b. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use CRSI Class 1A epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
    - c. For stainless steel reinforcement, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire, all-plastic bar supports, or CRSI Class 2 stainless steel bar supports.
- D. Tie Wire: ASTM A1064/A1064M, annealed steel, not less than 0.0508 inch (1.2908 mm) in diameter.
  - 1. Finish: Plain .
- E. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating; compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement and complying with ASTM A775/A775M.

## **2.3 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT**

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Protection of In-Place Conditions:
  - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder.
  - 2. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that reduce bond to concrete.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION OF STEEL REINFORCEMENT**

- A. Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing and supporting reinforcement.

- B. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement.
  - 1. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover.
  - 2. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
- C. Preserve clearance between bars of not less than 1 inch (25 mm), not less than one bar diameter, or not less than 1-1/3 times size of large aggregate, whichever is greater.
- D. Provide concrete coverage in accordance with ACI 318 (ACI 318M).
- E. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- F. Splices: Lap splices as indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Bars indicated to be continuous, and all vertical bars shall be lapped not less than 36 bar diameters at splices, or 24 inches (610 mm), whichever is greater.
  - 2. Stagger splices in accordance with ACI 318 (ACI 318M).
- G. Install welded-wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths.
  - 1. Support welded-wire reinforcement in accordance with CRSI "Manual of Standard Practice."
    - a. For reinforcement less than W4.0 or D4.0, continuous support spacing shall not exceed 12 inches (305 mm).
  - 2. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing plus 2 inches (50 mm) for plain wire and 8 inches (200 mm) for deformed wire.
  - 3. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
  - 4. Lace overlaps with wire.
- H. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Repair cut and damaged epoxy coatings with epoxy repair coating in accordance with ASTM D3963/D3963M.

### **3.3 JOINTS**

- A. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
  - 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
  - 2. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
- B. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length, to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

### **3.4 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES**

- A. Comply with ACI 117 (ACI 117M).

**3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Inspections:
  - 1. Steel-reinforcement placement.

**END OF SECTION 03 2000**



**This page intentionally left blank.**

## **SECTION 03 3000**

### **CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cast-in-place concrete, including concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 1000 "Concrete Forming and Accessories" for form-facing materials, form liners, insulating concrete forms, and waterstops.
  - 2. Section 03 2000 "Concrete Reinforcing" for steel reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement.
  - 3. Section 32 1313 "Concrete Paving" for concrete pavement and walks.

##### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, other pozzolans, and silica fume; materials subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. Water/Cement Ratio (w/cm): The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

##### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For the following:
  - 1. Installer: Include copies of applicable ACI certificates.
  - 2. Ready-mixed concrete manufacturer.
- B. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
  - 1. Cementitious materials.
  - 2. Admixtures.
  - 3. Curing compounds.
  - 4. Vapor retarders.
  - 5. Semirigid joint filler.

6. Joint-filler strips.
  7. Repair materials.
- C. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:
1. Portland cement.
  2. Fly ash.
  3. Slag cement.
  4. Aggregates.
- D. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements report, indicating compliance with specified tolerances.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

## **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs Project personnel qualified as a ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is a certified ACI Flatwork Concrete Finisher/Technician or an ACI Concrete Flatwork Technician with experience installing and finishing concrete, incorporating permeability-reducing admixtures.
1. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors Installers: ACI-certified Adhesive Anchor Installer.
- B. Ready-Mixed Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C94/C94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
1. Manufacturer certified in accordance with NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- C. Laboratory Testing Agency Qualifications: A testing agency qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated, and employing an ACI-certified Concrete Quality Control Technical Manager.
1. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade I. Testing agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade II.
- D. Field Quality Control Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.
1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as an ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, in accordance with ACI CPP 610.1 or an equivalent certification program.

## **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Comply with ASTM C94/C94M and ACI 301 .

## **1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 306.1 and as follows.
  - 1. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
  - 2. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301 .
  - 3. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
  - 4. Do not place concrete in contact with surfaces less than 35 deg F , other than reinforcing steel.
  - 5. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 305.1 , and as follows:
  - 1. Maintain concrete temperature at time of discharge to not exceed 95 deg F .
  - 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL**

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
  - 1. ACI 301 .
  - 2. ACI 305.
  - 3. ACI 306.1.
  - 4. ACI 318

### **2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS**

- A. Source Limitations:
  - 1. Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant.
  - 2. Obtain aggregate from single source.
  - 3. Obtain each type of admixture from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Cementitious Materials:
  - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I/II , gray .
  - 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F.
  - 3. Slag Cement: ASTM C989/C989M, Grade 100 or 120.
- C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C33/C33M, Class 3M coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.

1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1 inch nominal.
  2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride in steel-reinforced concrete.
1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type A.
  2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type B.
  3. Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type D.
  4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type F.
  5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type G.
  6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C1017/C1017M, Type II.
- F. Water and Water Used to Make Ice: ASTM C94/C94M, potable

### **2.3 VAPOR RETARDERS**

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarder, Class A: ASTM E1745, Class A; not less than 15 mils thick. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Barrier-Bac; Inteplast Group.
    - b. Fortifiber Building Systems Group.
    - c. Stego Industries, LLC.
    - d. W.R. Meadows, Inc.

### **2.4 CURING MATERIALS**

- A. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C171, polyethylene film burlap-polyethylene sheet.
1. Color:
    - a. Ambient Temperature Below 50 deg F : Black.
    - b. Ambient Temperature between 50 deg F and 85 deg F : Any color.
    - c. Ambient Temperature Above 85 deg F : White.
- B. Water: Potable or complying with ASTM C1602/C1602M.
- C. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming, Dissipating Curing Compound: ASTM C309, Type 1, Class B.

### **2.5 RELATED MATERIALS**

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D1752, cork or self-expanding cork.

- B. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A shore durometer hardness of 80 in accordance with ASTM D2240.
- C. Bonding Agent: ASTM C1059/C1059M, Type II, nonredispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- D. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
  - 1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

## **2.6 REPAIR MATERIALS**

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C150/C150M portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement, as defined in ASTM C219.
  - 2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand, as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  - 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M.
- B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/4 inch and that can be filled in over a scarified surface to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C150/C150M portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement, as defined in ASTM C219.
  - 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
  - 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M.

## **2.7 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL**

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, in accordance with ACI 301 .
  - 1. Use a qualified testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs, based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:

1. Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans: 25 percent by mass.
2. Slag Cement: 50 percent by mass.
3. Silica Fume: 10 percent by mass.

C. Admixtures: Use admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Use water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
2. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, and concrete with a w/cm below 0.50.

## 2.8 CONCRETE MIXTURES

A. Class A: Normal-weight concrete used for footings, grade beams, and tie beams.

1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 F2 S0 W0 C1 .
2. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
3. Maximum w/cm: 0.45 .
4. Slump Limit: 5 inches , plus or minus 1 inch .
5. Air Content:
  - a. Exposure Classes F2 and F3: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete containing 1-inch nominal maximum aggregate size .
6. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.30 percent by weight of cement.

B. Class B: Normal-weight concrete used for foundation walls.

1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 F2 S0 W0 C1 .
2. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
3. Maximum w/cm: 0.45 .
4. Slump Limit: 5 inches , plus or minus 1 inch .
5. Air Content:
  - a. Exposure Classes F2 and F3: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete containing 1-inch nominal maximum aggregate size .
6. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.30 0.15 percent by weight of cement.

C. Class C: Normal-weight concrete used for interior slabs-on-ground.

1. Exposure Class: ACI 318 F0 S0 W0 C0 .
2. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
3. Maximum w/cm: 0.45 .
4. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 520 lb/cu. yd. .
5. Slump Limit: 4 inches , plus or minus 1 inch .
6. Air Content:
  - a. Do not use an air-entraining admixture or allow total air content to exceed 3 percent for concrete used in trowel-finished floors.
7. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.30 percent by weight of cement.

## **2.9 CONCRETE MIXING**

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M, and furnish batch ticket information.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verification of Conditions:
  - 1. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of concrete forms, accessories, and reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
  - 2. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS**

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining Work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete.
  - 1. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 2. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of ANSI/AISC 303.
  - 3. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDER**

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder in accordance with ASTM E1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install vapor retarder with longest dimension parallel with direction of concrete pour.
  - 2. Face laps away from exposed direction of concrete pour.
  - 3. Lap vapor retarder over footings and grade beams not less than 6 inches , sealing vapor retarder to concrete.
  - 4. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.
  - 5. Terminate vapor retarder at the top of floor slabs, grade beams, and pile caps, sealing entire perimeter to floor slabs, grade beams, foundation walls, or pile caps.
  - 6. Seal penetrations in accordance with vapor retarder manufacturer's instructions.
  - 7. Protect vapor retarder during placement of reinforcement and concrete.
    - a. Repair damaged areas by patching with vapor retarder material, overlapping damages area by 6 inches on all sides, and sealing to vapor retarder.

### **3.4 JOINTS**

- A. Construct joints true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.



- B. Construction Joints: Coordinate with floor slab pattern and concrete placement sequence.
1. Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated on Drawings or as approved by Architect.
  2. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
    - a. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
  3. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
  4. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders at third points of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
  5. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
  6. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated on Drawings . Unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, locate vertical joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
  7. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Control Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Form weakened-plane control joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct control joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
1. Grooved Joints: Form control joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch . Repeat grooving of control joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
  2. Sawed Joints: Form control joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface, where joint sealants, specified in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
  3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- E. Doweled Joints:
1. Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated on Drawings.
  2. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel bar length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- F. Dowel Plates: Install dowel plates at joints where indicated on Drawings.

### 3.5 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, embedded items, and vapor retarder is complete and that required inspections are completed.
  - 1. Immediately prior to concrete placement, inspect vapor retarder for damage and deficient installation, and repair defective areas.
  - 2. Provide continuous inspection of vapor retarder during concrete placement and make necessary repairs to damaged areas as Work progresses.
- B. Notify Architect and testing and inspection agencies 24 hours prior to commencement of concrete placement.
- C. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect in writing, but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.
  - 1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- D. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301 , but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.
  - 1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- E. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness.
  - 1. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated.
  - 2. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
  - 3. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
  - 4. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment in accordance with ACI 301 .
    - a. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms.
    - b. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer.
    - c. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity.
    - d. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete, and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- F. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
  - 1. Do not place concrete floors and slabs in a checkerboard sequence.
  - 2. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
  - 3. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
  - 4. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
  - 5. Level concrete, cut high areas, and fill low areas.
  - 6. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.

7. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface.
8. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

### **3.6 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES**

A. As-Cast Surface Finishes:

1. ACI 301 Surface Finish SF-1.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material.
  - a. Patch voids larger than 1-1/2 inches wide or 1/2 inch deep.
  - b. Remove projections larger than 1 inch .
  - c. Tie holes do not require patching.
  - d. Surface Tolerance: ACI 117 Class D.
  - e. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view .
2. ACI 301 Surface Finish SF-2.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams.
  - a. Patch voids larger than 3/4 inch wide or 1/2 inch deep.
  - b. Remove projections larger than 1/4 inch .
  - c. Patch tie holes.
  - d. Surface Tolerance: ACI 117 Class B.
  - e. Locations: Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, to receive a rubbed finish, or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete .

B. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to as cast surface finishes where indicated on Drawings:

1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish:
  - a. Perform no later than one day after form removal.
  - b. Moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture.
  - c. If sufficient cement paste cannot be drawn from the concrete by the rubbing process, use a grout made from the same cementitious materials used in the in-place concrete.
2. Grout-Cleaned Rubbed Finish:
  - a. Clean concrete surfaces after contiguous surfaces are completed and accessible.
  - b. Do not clean concrete surfaces as Work progresses.
  - c. Mix 1 part portland cement to 1-1/2 parts fine sand, complying with ASTM C144 or ASTM C404, by volume, with sufficient water to produce a mixture with the consistency of thick paint. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches, so color of dry grout matches adjacent surfaces.
  - d. Wet concrete surfaces.
  - e. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap, and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.

### **3.7 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS**

- A. Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Float Finish:

1. When bleedwater sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operation of specific float apparatus, consolidate concrete surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power-driven floats.
2. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture and complies with ACI 117 tolerances for conventional concrete.
3. Apply float finish to surfaces to receive trowel finish .

C. Trowel Finish:

1. After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel.
2. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance.
3. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
4. Do not add water to concrete surface.
5. Do not apply hard-troweled finish to concrete, which has a total air content greater than 3 percent.
6. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system .
7. Finish and measure surface, so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unlevelled, freestanding, 10-ft.- long straightedge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 3/16 inch .

D. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces indicated on Drawings where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thinset method. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom perpendicular to main traffic route.

1. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.
2. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel-finished floor surfaces.

E. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and locations indicated on Drawings.

1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route.
2. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

### **3.8 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS**

A. Filling In:

1. Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after Work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated.
2. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction.
3. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.

C. Equipment Bases and Foundations:

1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
2. Construct concrete bases 4 inches high unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, and extend base not less than 6 inches in each direction beyond the maximum dimensions of supported equipment unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, or unless required for seismic anchor support.
3. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi at 28 days.
4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete substrate.
6. Prior to pouring concrete, place and secure anchorage devices.
  - a. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - b. Cast anchor-bolt insert into bases.
  - c. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

**3.9 CONCRETE CURING**

A. Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.

1. Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 306.1 for cold weather protection during curing.
2. Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 305.1 for hot-weather protection during curing.

B. Curing Formed Surfaces: Comply with ACI 308.1 as follows:

1. Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces.
2. Cure concrete containing color pigments in accordance with color pigment manufacturer's instructions.
3. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms.
4. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period, as follows:
  - a. Continuous Fogging: Maintain standing water on concrete surface until final setting of concrete.
  - b. Continuous Sprinkling: Maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
  - c. Absorptive Cover: Pre-dampen absorptive material before application; apply additional water to absorptive material to maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
  - d. Water-Retention Sheeting Materials: Cover exposed concrete surfaces with sheeting material, taping, or lapping seams.
  - e. Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
    - 1) Recoat areas subject to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
    - 2) Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

C. Curing Unformed Surfaces: Comply with ACI 308.1 as follows:

1. Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete.
2. Interior Concrete Floors:

- a. Floors to Receive Floor Coverings Specified in Other Sections: Contractor has option of the following:
  - 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
    - a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than 12-inches .
    - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
  - 2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches , and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.
    - a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
    - b) Cure for not less than seven days.
  - 3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
    - a) Water.
    - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
- b. Floors to Receive Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatments: Contractor has option of the following:
  - 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
    - a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than 12 inches .
    - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
  - 2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches , and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.
    - a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
    - b) Cure for not less than seven days.
  - 3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
    - a) Water.
    - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
- c. Floors to Receive Polished Finish: Contractor has option of the following:
  - 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
    - a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than 12 inches .
    - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
  - 2) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
    - a) Water.
    - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
- d. Floors to Receive Chemical Stain:
  - 1) As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install curing paper over entire area of floor.

- 2) Install curing paper square to building lines, without wrinkles, and in a single length without end joints.
  - 3) Butt sides of curing paper tight; do not overlap sides of curing paper.
  - 4) Leave curing paper in place for duration of curing period, but not less than 28 days.
- e. Floors to Receive Urethane Flooring:
- 1) As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
  - 2) Rewet absorptive cover, and cover immediately with polyethylene moisture-retaining cover with edges lapped 6 inches and sealed in place.
  - 3) Secure polyethylene moisture-retaining cover in place to prohibit air from circulating under polyethylene moisture-retaining cover.
  - 4) Leave absorptive cover and polyethylene moisture-retaining cover in place for duration of curing period, but not less than 28 days.
- f. Floors to Receive Curing Compound:
- 1) Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2) Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
  - 3) Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.
  - 4) Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
- g. Floors to Receive Curing and Sealing Compound:
- 1) Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2) Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
  - 3) Repeat process 24 hours later, and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.

### **3.10 TOLERANCES**

- A. Conform to ACI 117 .

### **3.11 JOINT FILLING**

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one month(s).
  2. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joints clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches deep in formed joints.
- D. Overfill joint, and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

### 3.12 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete:
  - 1. Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect.
  - 2. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
  - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension to solid concrete.
    - a. Limit cut depth to 3/4 inch .
    - b. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface.
    - c. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent.
    - d. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
    - e. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
  - 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement, so that, when dry, patching mortar matches surrounding color.
    - a. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching.
    - b. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
  - 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that will affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces:
  - 1. Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish, and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface.
    - a. Correct low and high areas.
    - b. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
  - 2. Repair finished surfaces containing surface defects, including spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing, and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
  - 3. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
  - 4. Correct localized low areas during, or immediately after, completing surface-finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar.
    - a. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
  - 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment.
    - a. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
    - b. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - 6. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with repair topping.
    - a. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations.



- b. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
- 7. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete.
  - a. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts, and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around.
  - b. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent.
  - c. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete, except without coarse aggregate.
  - d. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete.
  - e. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
- 8. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar.
  - a. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete, and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles.
  - b. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent.
  - c. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
  - d. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete.
  - e. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

### **3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform field tests and inspections and prepare testing and inspection reports.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
  - 1. Testing agency shall immediately report to Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer any failure of Work to comply with Contract Documents.
  - 2. Testing agency shall report results of tests and inspections, in writing, to Owner, Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer within 48 hours of inspections and tests.
    - a. Test reports shall include reporting requirements of ASTM C31/C31M and ASTM C39/C39M, including the following as applicable to each test and inspection:
      - 1) Project name.
      - 2) Name of testing agency.
      - 3) Names and certification numbers of field and laboratory technicians performing inspections and testing.
      - 4) Name of concrete manufacturer.
      - 5) Date and time of inspection, sampling, and field testing.
      - 6) Date and time of concrete placement.
      - 7) Location in Work of concrete represented by samples.
      - 8) Date and time sample was obtained.
      - 9) Truck and batch ticket numbers.
      - 10) Design compressive strength at 28 days.

- 11) Concrete mixture designation, proportions, and materials.
  - 12) Field test results.
  - 13) Information on storage and curing of samples before testing, including curing method and maximum and minimum temperatures during initial curing period.
  - 14) Type of fracture and compressive break strengths at seven days and 28 days.
- C. Batch Tickets: For each load delivered, submit three copies of batch delivery ticket to testing agency, indicating quantity, mix identification, admixtures, design strength, aggregate size, design air content, design slump at time of batching, and amount of water that can be added at Project site.
- D. Inspections:
1. Headed bolts and studs.
  2. Verification of use of required design mixture.
  3. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
  4. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
  5. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
  6. Batch Plant Inspections: On a random basis, as determined by Architect.
- E. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained in accordance with ASTM C 172/C 172M shall be performed in accordance with the following requirements:
1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd. , but less than 25 cu. yd. , plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
    - a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  2. Slump: ASTM C143/C143M:
    - a. One test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
    - b. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  3. Air Content: ASTM C231/C231M pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; .
    - a. One test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C1064/C1064M:
    - a. One test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below or 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
  5. Unit Weight: ASTM C567/C567M fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete.
    - a. One test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  6. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C31/C31M:
    - a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two 6-inch by 12-inch cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
    - b. Cast and field cure two sets of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  7. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M.
    - a. Test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at seven days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
    - b. Test one set of two field-cured specimens at seven days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.

- c. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
  - 8. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
  - 9. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength, and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi if specified compressive strength is 5000 psi , or no compressive strength test value is less than 1 percent of specified compressive strength if specified compressive strength is greater than 5000 psi .
  - 10. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
  - 11. Additional Tests:
    - a. Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
    - b. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C42/C42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.
      - 1) Acceptance criteria for concrete strength shall be in accordance with ACI 301 section 1.6.6.3.
  - 12. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
  - 13. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.
- F. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness in accordance with ASTM E1155 within 72 hours of completion of floor finishing and promptly report test results to Architect.

### **3.14 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect concrete surfaces as follows:
- 1. Protect from petroleum stains.
  - 2. Diaper hydraulic equipment used over concrete surfaces.
  - 3. Prohibit vehicles from interior concrete slabs.
  - 4. Prohibit use of pipe-cutting machinery over concrete surfaces.
  - 5. Prohibit placement of steel items on concrete surfaces.
  - 6. Prohibit use of acids or acidic detergents over concrete surfaces.
  - 7. Protect liquid floor treatment from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by liquid floor treatments installer.
  - 8. Protect concrete surfaces scheduled to receive surface hardener or polished concrete finish using Floor Slab Protective Covering.

**END OF SECTION 03 3000**

## **SECTION 04 2000**

### **UNIT MASONRY**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.1 SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:

1. Concrete masonry units.
2. Concrete building brick.
3. Clay face brick.
4. Mortar and grout.
5. Steel reinforcing bars.
6. Masonry-joint reinforcement.
7. Ties and anchors.
8. Embedded flashing.
9. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.

B. Products Installed but not Furnished under This Section:

1. Steel lintels in unit masonry.
2. Steel shelf angles for supporting unit masonry.
3. Cavity wall insulation.

C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 07 1900 "Water Repellents" for water repellents applied to unit masonry assemblies.
2. Section 07 2100 "Thermal Insulation" for cavity wall insulation.
3. Section 07 6200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for exposed sheet metal flashing and for furnishing manufactured reglets installed in masonry joints.

##### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
- B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

##### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of the following:
1. Clay face brick , in the form of straps of five or more bricks.
  2. Special brick shapes.

3. Pigmented and colored-aggregate mortar. Make Samples using same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project.
4. Weep holes and cavity vents.
5. Accessories embedded in masonry.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. List of Materials Used in Constructing Mockups: List generic product names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, model numbers, lot numbers, batch numbers, source of supply, and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and grout and source of aggregates.
  1. Submittal is for information only. Receipt of list does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents unless such deviations are specifically brought to the attention of Architect and approved in writing.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:
  1. Masonry units.
    - a. Include data on material properties material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
    - b. For brick, include size-variation data verifying that actual range of sizes falls within specified tolerances.
    - c. For exposed brick, include test report for efflorescence according to ASTM C67.
  2. Integral water repellent used in CMUs.
  3. Cementitious materials. Include name of manufacturer, brand name, and type.
  4. Mortar admixtures.
  5. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  6. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  7. Reinforcing bars.
  8. Joint reinforcement.
  9. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- D. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test according to ASTM C109/C109M for compressive strength, ASTM C1506 for water retention, and ASTM C91/C91M for air content.
  2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
- E. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C1093 for testing indicated.

## **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

## **1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
  - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides of walls, and hold cover securely in place.
  - 2. Where one wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches down face next to unconstructed wythe, and hold cover in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
  - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
  - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
  - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
  - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

### **2.2 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL**

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6, except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects are exposed in the completed Work and will be within 20 feet vertically and horizontally of a walking surface.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with requirements for fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated.
  1. Where fire-resistance-rated construction is indicated, units shall be listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### **2.3 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS**

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
  2. Provide bullnose units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
- B. CMUs: ASTM C90.
  1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2150 psi .
  2. Density Classification: Medium density or contractor's option.
  3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions.

4. Exposed Faces: Provide color and texture matching the range represented by Architect's sample.

C. Concrete Building Brick: ASTM C55.

1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2800 psi .
2. Density Classification: Normal weight.
3. Size (Actual Dimensions): To match existing, verify at project site.

## **2.4 BRICK**

A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching finish and color of exposed faces of adjacent units:

1. For ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished.
2. Provide special shapes for applications where stretcher units cannot accommodate special conditions, including those at corners, movement joints, bond beams, sashes, and lintels.
3. Provide special shapes for applications requiring brick of size, form, color, and texture on exposed surfaces that cannot be produced by sawing.
4. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.

B. Clay Face Brick: Facing brick complying with ASTM C216 .

1. Size and shape to match existing, verify at project site.
2. Grade: SW .
3. Type: FBS .
4. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 3350 psi .
5. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested according to ASTM C67.
6. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C67 and is rated "not effloresced."
7. Color and Texture: As indicated on contract documents .

## **2.5 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS**

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.

1. Alkali content shall not be more than 0.1 percent when tested according to ASTM C114.

B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.

C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.



- D. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91/C91M.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Holcim (US) Inc.
    - b. Lafarge North America Inc.
    - c. Lehigh Hanson; HeidelbergCement Group.
- E. Mortar Cement: ASTM C1329/C1329M.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Lafarge North America Inc.
- F. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C979/C979M. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
- G. Colored Cement Products: Packaged blend made from portland cement and hydrated lime or masonry cement and mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements, and containing no other ingredients.
1. Colored Portland Cement-Lime Mix:
  2. Colored Masonry Cement:
  3. Formulate blend as required to produce color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
  4. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  5. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement or mortar cement by weight.
- H. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C144.
1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
  2. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
  3. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- I. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C404.
- J. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C494/C494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Corporation.
    - b. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company.
    - c. GCP Applied Technologies Inc.
- K. Water: Potable.

## 2.6 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Uncoated-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M or ASTM A996/A996M, Grade 60 .
- B. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells and to hold reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.148-inch steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units designed for number of bars indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dur-O-Wal; a Hohmann & Barnard company.
    - b. Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
    - c. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - d. Wire-Bond.
- C. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A951/A951M.
  - 1. Interior Walls: Mill-or-Hot-dipgalvanized carbon steel, Contractor's option.
  - 2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
  - 3. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.187-inch diameter.
  - 4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
  - 5. Wire Size for Veneer Ties: 0.148-inch diameter.
  - 6. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches o.c.
  - 7. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet , with prefabricated corner and tee units.
- D. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement for Single-Wythe Masonry: Ladder type with single pair of side rods.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Wire-Bond.
- E. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement for Multiwythe Masonry:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Wire-Bond.
  - 2. Ladder type with one side rod at each face shell of hollow masonry units more than 4 inches wide, plus one side rod at each wythe of masonry 4 inches wide or less.
  - 3. Tab type, either ladder or truss design, with one side rod at each face shell of backing wythe and with rectangular tabs sized to extend at least halfway through facing wythe, but with at least 5/8-inch cover on outside face.
  - 4. Adjustable (two-piece) type, either ladder or truss design, with one side rod at each face shell of backing wythe and with separate adjustable ties with pintle-and-eye connections having a maximum horizontal play of 1/16 inch and maximum vertical adjustment of 1-1/4 inches . Size ties to extend at least halfway through facing wythe but with at least 5/8-inch cover on outside face. Ties have hooks or clips to engage a continuous horizontal wire in the facing wythe.

## 2.7 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. General: Ties and anchors shall extend at least 1-1/2 inches into veneer but with at least a 5/8-inch cover on outside face.
- B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A82/A82M, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B-2 coating.
  - 2. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel, G60 zinc coating.
  - 3. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B coating.
  - 4. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
  - 5. Stainless Steel Bars: ASTM A276 or ASTM A666, Type 304.
- C. Individual Wire Ties: Rectangular units with closed ends and not less than 4 inches wide.
  - 1. Z-shaped ties with ends bent 90 degrees to provide hooks not less than 2 inches long may be used for masonry constructed from solid units.
  - 2. Where wythes do not align, use adjustable ties with pintle-and-eye connections having a maximum adjustment of 1-1/4 inches.
  - 3. Wire: Fabricate from 3/16-inch- diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
- D. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Structural Steel Framing: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
  - 1. Anchor Section for Welding to Steel Frame: Crimped 1/4-inch- diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
  - 2. Tie Section: Triangular-shaped wire tie made from 0.187-inch- diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
- E. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors:
  - 1. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist a 100-lbf load in both tension and compression perpendicular to plane of wall without deforming or developing play in excess of 1/16 inch.
  - 2. Contractor's Option: Unless otherwise indicated, provide any of the adjustable masonry-veneer anchors specified.
  - 3. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Wire tie and a rib-stiffened, sheet metal anchor section with screw holes top and bottom, with a projecting vertical tab having a slotted hole for inserting wire tie.
  - 4. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Wire tie and a rib-stiffened, sheet metal anchor section with screw holes top and bottom, with projecting tabs having holes for inserting vertical legs of wire tie formed to fit anchor section.
  - 5. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Wire tie and a sheet metal anchor section, 1-1/4 inches wide by 9 inches long, with screw holes top and bottom and with raised rib-stiffened strap, 5/8 inch wide by 5-1/2 inches long, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and base for inserting wire tie.
  - 6. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Wire tie and a sheet metal anchor section, 1-1/4 inches wide by 6 inches long, with screw holes top and bottom and with raised rib-stiffened strap, 5/8 inch wide by 3-5/8 inches long, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and base for inserting wire tie.

7. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Wire tie and a gasketed sheet metal anchor section, 1-1/4 inches wide by 6 inches long, with screw holes top and bottom; top and bottom ends bent to form pronged legs of length to match thickness of insulation or sheathing; and raised rib-stiffened strap, 5/8 inch wide by 6 inches long, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and base for inserting wire tie. Self-adhering, modified bituminous gasket fits behind anchor plate and extends beyond pronged legs.

## **2.8 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS**

- A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as follows:
  1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, 0.016 inch thick.
  2. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections 96 inches long minimum, but not exceeding 12 feet . Provide splice plates at joints of formed, smooth metal flashing.
  3. Fabricate through-wall metal flashing embedded in masonry from stainless steel , with ribs at 3-inch intervals along length of flashing to provide an integral mortar bond.
  4. Fabricate through-wall flashing with snaplock receiver on exterior face where indicated to receive counterflashing.
  5. Fabricate through-wall flashing with drip edge indicated. Fabricate by extending flashing 1/2 inch out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees.
- B. Application: Unless otherwise indicated, use the following:
  1. Where flashing is indicated to receive counterflashing, use metal flashing.
  2. Where flashing is indicated to be turned down at or beyond the wall face, use metal flashing.
  3. Where flashing is partly exposed and is indicated to terminate at the wall face, use metal flashing with a drip edge .
  4. Where flashing is fully concealed, use flexible flashing.
- C. Single-Wythe CMU Flashing System: System of CMU cell flashing pans and interlocking CMU web covers made from UV-resistant, high-density polyethylene. Cell flashing pans have integral weep spouts designed to be built into mortar bed joints and that extend into the cell to prevent clogging with mortar.
- D. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings:
  1. Solder for Stainless Steel: ASTM B32, Grade Sn60or Grade Sn96, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless steel sheet manufacturer.
  2. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, chemically curing urethane sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and remain watertight.
- E. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.
- F. Termination Bars for Flexible Flashing: Stainless steel bars 0.075 inch by 1 inch .

## **2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES**

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene urethane or PVC.
- B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D2000, Designation M2AA-805 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.
- C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated felt complying with ASTM D226/D226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).
- D. Weep/Cavity Vent Products: Use the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Vinyl Weep Hole/Vent: Units made from flexible PVC, designed to fit into a head joint and consisting of a louvered vertical leg, flexible wings to seal against ends of masonry units, and a top flap to keep mortar out of the head joint; in color selected by Architect.
- E. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
    - b. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - c. Mortar Net Solutions.
    - d. Wire-Bond.
  - 2. Configuration: Provide one of the following:
    - a. Strips, full depth of cavity and 10 inches high, with dovetail-shaped notches 7 inches deep that prevent clogging with mortar droppings.
    - b. Strips, not less than 3/4 inch thick and 10 inches high, with dimpled surface designed to catch mortar droppings and prevent weep holes from clogging with mortar.
    - c. Sheets or strips, full depth of cavity and installed to full height of cavity.
    - d. Sheets or strips not less than 3/4 inch thick and installed to full height of cavity, with additional strips 4 inches high at weep holes and thick enough to fill entire depth of cavity and prevent weep holes from clogging with mortar.

## **2.10 MASONRY CLEANERS**

- A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.; a Hohmann & Barnard company.
    - b. EaCo Chem, Inc.
    - c. PROSOCO, Inc.

## **2.11 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES**

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
  - 2. Use portland cement-lime or mortar cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C270, Property Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated.
  - 1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type M.
  - 2. For load bearing reinforced masonry, use Type S .
  - 3. For non-load-bearing walls and partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.
- D. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
  - 1. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  - 2. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement by weight.
  - 3. Mix to match Architect's sample.
- E. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C476.
  - 1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
  - 2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C476, Table 1 or paragraph 4.2.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 2000 psi .
  - 3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C143/C143M.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
  - 2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
  - 3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
  - 4. Verify that substrates are free of substances that impair mortar bond.

- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to full thickness shown. Build single-wythe walls to actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.
- B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- E. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
- F. Matching Existing Masonry: Match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of existing masonry.
- G. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested according to ASTM C67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.

### **3.3 TOLERANCES**

- A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:
  - 1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch .
  - 2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch .
  - 3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2 inch total.
- B. Lines and Levels:
  - 1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet , or 1/2-inch maximum.
  - 2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet , 1/4 inch in 20 feet , or 1/2-inch maximum.
  - 3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet , 3/8 inch in 20 feet , or 1/2-inch maximum.
  - 4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet , 1/4 inch in 20 feet , or 1/2-inch maximum.

5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet , 3/8 inch in 20 feet , or 1/2-inch maximum.
6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet or 1/2-inch maximum.
7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.

C. Joints:

1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch , with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch .
2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch .
3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch .
4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch . Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch .

### 3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in bond pattern indicated on Drawings; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than 4 inches . Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- F. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below, and rod mortar or grout into core.
- H. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Build nonload-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above unless otherwise indicated.



1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
2. Fasten partition top anchors to structure above and build into top of partition. Grout cells of CMUs solidly around plastic tubes of anchors and push tubes down into grout to provide 1/2-inch clearance between end of anchor rod and end of tube. Space anchors 48 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
3. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Section 07 8443 "Joint Firestopping."

### **3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING**

- A. Lay and CMUs as follows:
1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
  2. Bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
  3. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
  4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
  5. Fully bed units and fill cells with mortar at anchors and ties as needed to fully embed anchors and ties in mortar.
- B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Set cast-stone trim units in full bed of mortar with full vertical joints. Fill dowel, anchor, and similar holes.
1. Clean soiled surfaces with fiber brush and soap powder and rinse thoroughly with clear water.
  2. Allow cleaned surfaces to dry before setting.
  3. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar.
- D. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint) unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Cut joints flush where indicated to receive cavity wall insulation unless otherwise indicated.

### **3.6 CAVITY WALLS**

- A. Bond wythes of cavity walls together using one of the following methods :
1. Individual Metal Ties: Provide ties as shown installed in horizontal joints, but not less than one metal tie for 2.67 sq. ft. of wall area spaced not to exceed 16 inches o.c. horizontally and 16 inches o.c. vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide additional ties within 12 inches of openings and space not more than 36 inches apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no more than 24 inches o.c. vertically.
    - a. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) ties.

- b. Where one wythe is of clay masonry and the other of concrete masonry, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) ties to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed joints align.
  - 2. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints.
    - a. Where bed joints of both wythes align, use tab-type reinforcement.
    - b. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties.
    - c. Where one wythe is of clay masonry and the other of concrete masonry, use adjustable-type (two-piece-type) reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed joints align.
  - 3. Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Comply with requirements for anchoring masonry veneers.
- B. Keep cavities clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from cavity, to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into cavity.
- C. Installing Cavity Wall Insulation: Place small dabs of adhesive, spaced approximately 12 inches o.c. both ways, on inside face of insulation boards, or attach with plastic fasteners designed for this purpose. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other confining obstructions in cavity, with edges butted tightly both ways. Press units firmly against inside wythe of masonry or other construction as shown.
  - 1. Fill cracks and open gaps in insulation with crack sealer compatible with insulation and masonry.

### **3.7 MASONRY-JOINT REINFORCEMENT**

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches .
  - 1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.
  - 2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
  - 3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches beyond openings in addition to continuous reinforcement.
- B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
- D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.
- E. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at corners, returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

### **3.8 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE**

- A. Anchor masonry to structural steel and concrete, where masonry abuts or faces structural steel or concrete, to comply with the following:

1. Provide an open space not less than 1/2 inch wide between masonry and structural steel or concrete unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
2. Anchor masonry with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches o.c. vertically and 36 inches o.c. horizontally.

### **3.9 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS**

- A. General: Install control- and expansion-joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry using one of the following methods:
  1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of CMUs on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout, and rake out joints in exposed faces for application of sealant.
  2. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
  3. Install interlocking units designed for control joints. Install bond-breaker strips at joint. Keep head joints free and clear of mortar, or rake out joint for application of sealant.
  4. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints, and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.
- C. Form expansion joints in brick as follows:
  1. Build flanges of metal expansion strips into masonry. Lap each joint 4 inches in direction of water flow. Seal joints below grade and at junctures with horizontal expansion joints if any.
  2. Build flanges of factory-fabricated, expansion-joint units into masonry.
  3. Build in compressible joint fillers where indicated.
  4. Form open joint full depth of brick wythe and of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch for installation of sealant and backer rod specified in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."
- D. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an airspace or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants," but not less than 3/8 inch .
  1. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.

### **3.10 LINTELS**

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.
- B. Provide masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches for brick-size units and 24 inches for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
- C. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb unless otherwise indicated on contract documents.

### 3.11 FLASHING, WEEP HOLES, AND CAVITY VENTS

- A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated. Install cavity vents at shelf angles, ledges, and other obstructions to upward flow of air in cavities, and where indicated.
- B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
  - 2. At masonry-veneer walls, extend flashing through veneer, across airspace behind veneer, and up face of sheathing at least 8 inches ; with upper edge tucked under , lapping at least 4 inches .
  - 3. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches to form end dams.
  - 4. Interlock end joints of ribbed sheet metal flashing by overlapping ribs not less than 1-1/2 inches or as recommended by flashing manufacturer, and seal lap with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
  - 5. Install metal drip edges with ribbed sheet metal flashing by interlocking hemmed edges to form hooked seam. Seal seam with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
  - 6. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from outside face of wall, and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
  - 7. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from outside face of wall, and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.
  - 8. Cut flexible flashing off flush with face of wall after masonry wall construction is completed.
- C. Install single-wythe CMU flashing system in bed joints of CMU walls where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install CMU cell pans with upturned edges located below face shells and webs of CMUs above and with weep spouts aligned with face of wall. Install CMU web covers so that they cover upturned edges of CMU cell pans at CMU webs and extend from face shell to face shell.
- D. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are shown to be built into masonry.
- E. Install weep holes in exterior wythes and veneers in head joints of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing.
  - 1. Use specified weep/cavity vent products to form weep holes.
  - 2. Space weep holes 24 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Place cavity drainage material in airspace behind veneers to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories" Article.

- G. Install cavity vents in head joints in exterior wythes at spacing indicated. Use specified weep/cavity vent products to form cavity vents.
  - 1. Close cavities off vertically and horizontally with blocking in manner indicated. Install through-wall flashing and weep holes above horizontal blocking.

### **3.12 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY**

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
  - 1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
  - 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and that of other loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
  - 2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches 12.67 ft. .

### **3.13 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING**

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
  - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
  - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
  - 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.

4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
5. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
6. Clean concrete masonry by applicable cleaning methods indicated in NCMA TEK 8-4A.
7. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
8. Clean stone trim to comply with stone supplier's written instructions.

**3.14 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL**

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
- B. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

**END OF SECTION 04 2000**

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**SECTION 05 2100**  
**STEEL JOIST FRAMING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. K-series steel joists.
  - 2. Joist accessories.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 04 2000 "Unit Masonry" for installing bearing plates in unit masonry.

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. SJI's "Specifications": Steel Joist Institute's "Standard Specifications, Load Tables and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders."
- B. Special Joists: Steel joists or joist girders requiring modification by manufacturer to support nonuniform, unequal, or special loading conditions that invalidate load tables in SJI's "Specifications."

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of joist, accessory, and product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include layout, designation, number, type, location, and spacing of joists.
  - 2. Include joining and anchorage details; bracing, bridging, and joist accessories; splice and connection locations and details; and attachments to other construction.
  - 3. Indicate locations and details of bearing plates to be embedded in other construction.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer professional engineer.
- B. Mill Certificates: For each type of bolt.
- C. Comprehensive engineering analysis of special joists signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for its preparation.



## **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer certified by SJI to manufacture joists complying with applicable standard specifications and load tables in SJI's "Specifications ."
  - 1. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services for designing special joists to comply with performance requirements.

## **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver, store, and handle joists as recommended in SJI's "Specifications ."
- B. Protect joists from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

## **1.7 SEQUENCING**

- A. Deliver steel bearing plates to be built into masonry construction.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Canam Steel Corporation; Canam Group, Inc.
  - 2. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
  - 3. Vulcraft; Nucor Vulcraft Group.

### **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Structural Performance: Provide special joists and connections capable of withstanding design loads indicated.
  - 1. Use ASD; data are given at service-load level .
  - 2. Design special joists to withstand design loads with live-load deflections no greater than the following:
    - a. Roof Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/360 of the span.

### **2.3 K-SERIES STEEL JOISTS**

- A. Manufacture steel joists of type indicated according to "Standard Specification for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members, underslung ends, and parallel top chord.
  - 1. Joist Type: K-series steel joists .

- B. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joists.
- C. Do not camber joists.
- D. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches .

## **2.4 PRIMERS**

- A. Primer: Provide shop primer that complies with Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."

## **2.5 JOIST ACCESSORIES**

- A. Bridging: Provide bridging anchors and number of rows of horizontal or diagonal bridging of material, size, and type required by SJI's "Specifications" for type of joist, chord size, spacing, and span. Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
- B. Bridging: Schematically indicated. Detail and fabricate according to SJI's "Specifications." Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
- C. Bridging: Fabricate as indicated and according to SJI's "Specifications." Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
- D. Fabricate steel bearing plates from ASTM A 36/A 36M steel with integral anchorages of sizes and thicknesses indicated. Shop prime paint .
- E. Steel bearing plates with integral anchorages are specified in Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications."
- F. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F 3125/F 3125M, Grade A325 , Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade DH, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436/F 436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers.
  - 1. Finish: Plain .
- G. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.
- H. Furnish miscellaneous accessories including splice plates and bolts required by joist manufacturer to complete joist assembly.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine supporting substrates, embedded bearing plates, and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Do not install joists until supporting construction is in place and secured.
- B. Install joists and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction according to SJI's "Specifications," joist manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
  - 1. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
  - 2. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
  - 3. Install temporary bracing and erection bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure that joists are stabilized during construction.
  - 4. Delay rigidly connecting bottom-chord extensions to columns or supports until dead loads are applied.
- C. Field weld joists to supporting steel bearing plates and framework. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with placement of joists. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- D. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams.

### **3.3 PROTECTION**

- A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780/A 780M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists, bearing plates, abutting structural steel, and accessories.
  - 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by hand-tool cleaning according to SSPC-SP 2 or power-tool cleaning according to SSPC-SP 3.
  - 2. Apply a compatible primer of same type as primer used on adjacent surfaces.
- C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."

**END OF SECTION 05 2100**

## **SECTION 05 3100**

### **STEEL DECKING**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Roof deck.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel shapes.
  - 2. Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting" for repair painting of primed deck and finish painting of deck.

##### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

##### **1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.
  - 1. Protect and ventilate acoustical cellular roof deck with factory-installed insulation to maintain insulation free of moisture.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."

### **2.2 ROOF DECK**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Canam Steel Corporation; Canam Group, Inc.
  - 2. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
  - 3. Nucor Corp.
  - 4. Verco Decking, Inc., a Nucor company.
- B. Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, and with the following:
  - 1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 , G60 zinc coating.
  - 2. Deck Profile: Type WR, wide rib .
  - 3. Profile Depth: As indicated .
  - 4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated .
  - 5. Span Condition: Triple span or more.
  - 6. Side Laps: Overlapped or interlocking seam at Contractor's option.

### **2.3 ACCESSORIES**

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
- C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 minimum diameter.
- D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.
- E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, not less than 0.0359-inch design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
- F. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile recommended by SDI Publication No. 31 for overhang and slab depth.

- G. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Flat Sump Plates: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.
- I. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780/A 780M .
- J. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 31, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
- B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels if required to meet deflection limitations.
- C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.
- D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
- E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
- G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
- I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.3 ROOF-DECK INSTALLATION**

- A. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter that is not less than 1-1/2 inches long, and as follows:
  - 1. Weld Diameter: 3/4 inch , nominal.
  - 2. Weld Spacing: Weld edge and interior ribs of deck units with a minimum of two welds per deck unit at each support. Space welds 12 inches apart in the field of roof and 6 inches apart in roof corners and perimeter, based on roof-area definitions in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-28 .
  - 3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of one-half of the span or 18 inches , and as follows:
  - 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
  - 2. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:
  - 1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches minimum .
- D. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and mechanically fasten flanges to top of deck. Space mechanical fasteners not more than 12 inches apart with at least one fastener at each corner.
  - 1. Install reinforcing channels or zees in ribs to span between supports and mechanically fasten.
- E. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. mechanically fasten to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
  - 1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Flexible Closure Strips: Install flexible closure strips over partitions, walls, and where indicated. Install with adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure complete closure.

### **3.4 PROTECTION**

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780/A 780M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Repair Painting: Wire brushing, cleaning, and repair painting of rust spots, welds, and abraded areas of both deck surfaces are included in Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."

### **END OF SECTION 05 3100**

## **SECTION 05 5000**

### **METAL FABRICATIONS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
  - 2. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
  - 3. Shelf angles.
  - 4. Loose bearing and leveling plates for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:
  - 1. Loose steel lintels.
  - 2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 04 2000 "Unit Masonry" for installing loose lintels, anchor bolts, and other items built into unit masonry.

##### **1.3 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written instructions to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of metal fabrications that are anchored to or that receive other work. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

##### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following:



1. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate surface finishes.
  2. Fasteners.
  3. Shop primers.
  4. Shrinkage-resisting grout.
  5. Prefabricated building columns.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide Shop Drawings for the following:
1. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
  2. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
  3. Shelf angles.
  4. Loose steel lintels.

## **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

## **1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls, floor slabs, decks, and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

# **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

## **2.1 METALS**

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
- C. Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, and Plate: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304 .
- D. Steel Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M, cold-formed steel tubing.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.

## **2.2 FASTENERS**

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325, Type 3, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563, Grade DH3, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and where indicated, flat washers.
- D. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- E. Anchors, General: Capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- F. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A47/A47M malleable iron or ASTM A27/A27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F2329/F2329M.
- G. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
  - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593, and nuts, ASTM F594.
- H. Slotted-Channel Inserts: Cold-formed, hot-dip galvanized-steel box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4, 1-5/8 by 7/8 inches by length indicated with anchor straps or studs not less than 3 inches long at not more than 8 inches o.c. Provide with temporary filler and tee-head bolts, complete with washers and nuts, all zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B633, Class Fe/Zn 5, as needed for fastening to inserts.

## **2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting." and Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
- C. Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: Factory-packaged, nonmetallic, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

## **2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL**

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
- J. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches, with a minimum 6-inch embedment and 2-inch hook, not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

## **2.5 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS**

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
  - 1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.

2. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.
- C. Fabricate supports for operable partitions from continuous steel beams of sizes indicated with attached bearing plates, anchors, and braces as indicated . Drill or punch bottom flanges of beams to receive partition track hanger rods; locate holes where indicated on operable partition Shop Drawings.
- D. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.

## **2.6 SHELF ANGLES**

- A. Fabricate shelf angles from steel angles of sizes indicated and for attachment to concrete framing. Provide horizontally slotted holes to receive 3/4-inch bolts, spaced not more than 6 inches from ends and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Provide mitered and welded units at corners.
  2. Provide open joints in shelf angles at expansion and control joints. Make open joint approximately 2 inches larger than expansion or control joint.
- B. For cavity walls, provide vertical channel brackets to support angles from backup masonry and concrete.
- C. Galvanize and prime shelf angles located in exterior walls.
- D. Prime shelf angles located in exterior walls with
- E. Furnish wedge-type concrete inserts, complete with fasteners, to attach shelf angles to cast-in-place concrete.

## **2.7 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES**

- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
- B. Galvanize bearing and leveling plates.

## **2.8 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS**

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
- B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span, but not less than 8 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Galvanize and prime loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

## **2.9 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES**

- A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

## **2.10 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- B. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

## **2.11 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES**

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A153/A153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A123/A123M for other steel and iron products.
  - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming Galvanized Items: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean galvanized surfaces of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.
- C. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Shop prime with primers specified in Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting" primers specified in Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting" unless indicated.
- D. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
  - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

## **2.12 ALUMINUM FINISHES**

- A. As-Fabricated Finish: AA-M12.
- B. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class I, AA-M12C22A41.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges

and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.

- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:
  - 1. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.
  - 2. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS**

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.
- B. Anchor supports for ceiling hung toilet partitions operable partitions overhead doors securely to, and rigidly brace from, building structure.
- C. Anchor shelf angles securely to existing construction with expansion anchors.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION OF BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES**

- A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
- B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with shrinkage-resistant grout. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

### **3.4 REPAIRS**

A. Touchup Painting:

1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
2. Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting."

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

**END OF SECTION 05 5000**

**SECTION 06 1000**  
**ROUGH CARPENTRY**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  2. Wood blocking , cants, and nailers.
  3. Wood furring.
  4. Wood sleepers.

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal size or greater but less than 5 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- D. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal size or greater in least dimension.

**1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL**

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 19 percent 15 percent for 2-inch nominal thickness or less; 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal thickness 15 percent for 2-inch nominal thickness or less; no limit for more than 2-inch nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.



## **2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER**

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPAC U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
  - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.
  - 2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations shall not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
  - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
  - 1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
  - 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
  - 3. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.

## **2.3 FASTENERS**

- A. General: Fasteners shall be of size and type indicated and shall comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01 as appropriate for the substrate.
  - 1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
  - 2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F593 and ASTM F594, Alloy Group 1 or 2.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- D. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
  - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.
- E. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- F. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
  - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
  - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- G. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- H. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
- I. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.
- J. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.
  - 1. Use finishing nails unless otherwise indicated. Countersink nail heads and fill holes with wood filler.
  - 2. Use common nails unless otherwise indicated. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION OF WOOD BLOCKING AND NAILERS**

- A. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

### **3.3 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet enough that moisture content exceeds that specified, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

**END OF SECTION 06 1000**

## **SECTION 07 1416**

### **COLD FLUID-APPLIED WATERPROOFING**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Polyurethane waterproofing.

##### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

##### **2.1 SINGLE-COMPONENT POLYURETHANE WATERPROOFING**

- A. Two-Component, Unmodified Polyurethane Waterproofing: ASTM C 836/C 836M.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Urethane Polymers International, Inc.

##### **2.2 AUXILIARY MATERIALS**

- A. Primer: Manufacturer's standard primer, sealer, or surface conditioner; factory-formulated.
- B. Sheet Flashing: single layer of 60-mil- minimum, nonstaining, uncured sheet neoprene.
  - 1. Adhesive: Manufacturer's recommended contact adhesive.
- C. Membrane-Reinforcing Fabric: Manufacturer's recommended fiberglass mesh or polyester fabric.
- D. Joint Reinforcing Strip: Manufacturer's recommended fiberglass mesh or polyester fabric.
- E. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent polyurethane sealant, compatible with waterproofing; and as recommended by manufacturer for substrate and joint conditions.
  - 1. Backer Rod: Closed-cell polyethylene foam.

## **2.3 MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANELS**

- A. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel with Polymeric Film: Composite subsurface drainage panel consisting of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core; with a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 sieve laminated to one side of the core and a polymeric film bonded to the other side; and with a vertical flow rate through the core of 9 to 21 gpm per ft. .
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Hydrotech, Inc.
    - b. Urethane Polymers International, Inc.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for waterproofing application.
- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- C. Close off deck drains and other deck penetrations to prevent spillage and migration of waterproofing fluids.
- D. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, acid residues, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
- E. Remove fins, ridges, and other projections, and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids.
- F. Prepare surfaces at terminations and penetrations through waterproofing and at expansion joints, drains, sleeves, and corners according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in ASTM C 898/C 898M .
- G. Apply waterproofing in two separate applications, and embed a joint reinforcing strip in the first preparation coat when recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.
- H. Prepare, treat, rout, and fill joints and cracks in substrate according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in ASTM C 898/C 898M . Before coating surfaces, remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks according to ASTM D 4258.
- I. Install sheet flashing and bond to deck and wall substrates where required according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.2 WATERPROOFING APPLICATION**

- A. Apply waterproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in ASTM C 898/C 898M and ASTM C 1471/C 1471M.

B. Reinforced Waterproofing Applications.

1. Apply first coat of waterproofing, embed membrane-reinforcing fabric, and apply second coat of waterproofing to completely saturate reinforcing fabric and to obtain a seamless reinforced membrane free of entrapped gases and pinholes, with an average dry film total thickness of 70 mils minimum .

C. Install protection course with butted joints over waterproofing before starting subsequent construction operations.

1. For vertical applications, set protection course in nominally cured membrane, which will act as an adhesive. If membrane cures before application of protection course, use adhesive.
2. Molded-sheet drainage panels may be used in place of a separate protection course for vertical applications when approved in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.

### **3.3 MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANEL INSTALLATION**

- A. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesive or another method that does not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.

### **3.4 PROTECTION**

- A. Do not permit foot or vehicular traffic on unprotected membrane.
- B. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
- C. Correct deficiencies in or remove waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.

**END OF SECTION 07 1416**

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**SECTION 07 1900**  
**WATER REPELLENTS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes penetrating water-repellent treatments for the following vertical and horizontal surfaces:
  - 1. Concrete unit masonry.
  - 2. Clay brick masonry.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 04 2000 "Unit Masonry" for integral water-repellent admixture for unit masonry assemblies.

**1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include manufacturer's standard colors.
  - 2. Include manufacturer's recommended number of coats for each type of substrate and spreading rate for each separate coat.
  - 3. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified in Part 2 that specifies water repellents approved by MPI, with the proposed product highlighted.

**1.3 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Limitations: Proceed with application only when the following existing and forecasted weather and substrate conditions permit water repellents to be applied according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements:
  - 1. Concrete surfaces and mortar have cured for not less than 28 days.
  - 2. Building has been closed in for not less than 30 days before treating wall assemblies.
  - 3. Ambient temperature is above 40 deg F and below 100 deg F and will remain so for 24 hours.
  - 4. Substrate is not frozen and substrate-surface temperature is above 40 deg F and below 100 deg F.
  - 5. Rain or snow is not predicted within 24 hours.
  - 6. Not less than 24 hours have passed since surfaces were last wet.
  - 7. Windy conditions do not exist that might cause water repellent to be blown onto vegetation or surfaces not intended to be treated.



## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Performance: Water repellents shall meet the following performance requirements as determined by preconstruction testing on manufacturer's standard substrates representing those indicated for this Project.
- B. Water Absorption: Minimum 90 percent reduction of water absorption after 24 hours for treated compared to untreated specimens when tested according to the following:
  - 1. Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 140.
  - 2. Clay Brick: ASTM C 67.

### **2.2 PENETRATING WATER REPELLENTS**

- A. Silane/Siloxane-Blend, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, silane and siloxane blend with 600 g/L or less of VOCs.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Tnemec Inc.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry according to water-repellent manufacturer's requirements. Check moisture content in three representative locations by method recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Verify that there is no efflorescence or other removable residues that would be trapped beneath the application of water repellent.
  - 3. Verify that required repairs are complete, cured, and dry before applying water repellent.
- B. Test pH level according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions to ensure chemical bond to silica-containing or siliceous minerals.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. New Construction and Repairs: Allow concrete and other cementitious materials to age before application of water repellent, according to repellent manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Cleaning: Before application of water repellent, clean substrate of substances that could impair penetration or performance of product according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions .
  - 1. : Remove oil, curing compounds, laitance, and other substances that inhibit penetration or performance of water repellents according to ASTM E 1857 .
  - 2. Clay Brick Masonry: ASTM D 5703.
- C. Protect adjoining work, including mortar and sealant bond surfaces, from spillage or blow-over of water repellent. Cover adjoining and nearby surfaces of aluminum and glass if there is the possibility of water repellent being deposited on surfaces. Cover live vegetation.

### **3.3 APPLICATION**

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect the substrate before application of water repellent and to instruct Applicator on the product and application method to be used.
- B. Apply coating of water repellent on surfaces to be treated using 15 psi- pressure spray with a fan-type spray nozzle roller or brush to the point of saturation. Apply coating in dual passes of uniform, overlapping strokes. Remove excess material; do not allow material to puddle beyond saturation. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for application procedure unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. and : At Contractor's option, first application of water repellent may be completed before installing units. Mask mortar and sealant bond surfaces to prevent water repellent from migrating onto joint surfaces. Remove masking after repellent has cured.
- C. Apply a second saturation coating, repeating first application. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for limitations on drying time between coats and after rainstorm wetting of surfaces between coats. Consult manufacturer's technical representative if written instructions are not applicable to Project conditions.

**END OF SECTION 07 1900**

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**SECTION 07 2100**  
**THERMAL INSULATION**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Molded polystyrene foam-plastic board.
  - 2. Polyisocyanurate foam-plastic board.
  - 3. Loose-fill insulation.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 07 5423 "Thermoplastic-Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing" for insulation specified as part of roofing construction.

**1.2 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:
  - 1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
  - 2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site until just before installation time.
  - 3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MOLDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD**

- A. Molded Polystyrene Board, Type IX : ASTM C578, Type IX, 25-psi minimum compressive strength.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ACH Foam Technologies, Inc.
    - b. Atlas Molded Products; a Division of Atlas Roofing Corporation.
    - c. Insulfoam; Carlisle Construction Materials Company.

## **2.2 POLYISOCYANURATE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD**

- A. Polyisocyanurate Board, Foil Faced : ASTM C1289, foil faced, Type I, Class 1 or 2.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Atlas Molded Products; a Division of Atlas Roofing Corporation.
    - b. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
    - c. Dow Chemical Company (The).
    - d. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
  - 2. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.

## **2.3 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids:
  - 1. Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation: ASTM C1029, Type II, closed cell, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E84.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of puncturing insulation or vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION OF SLAB INSULATION**

- A. On vertical slab edge and foundation surfaces, set insulation units using manufacturer's recommended adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 24 inches below exterior grade line.

### **3.4 INSTALLATION OF FOUNDATION WALL INSULATION**

- A. Butt panels together for tight fit.
- B. Adhesive Installation: Install with adhesive or press into tacky waterproofing or dampproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.5 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION**

- A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Install pads of adhesive spaced approximately 24 inches o.c. both ways on inside face and as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions, and with faces flush.
  - 2. Press units firmly against inside substrates.
  - 3. Supplement adhesive attachment of insulation by securing boards with two-piece wall ties designed for this purpose and specified in Section 04 2000 "Unit Masonry."

### **3.6 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

### **END OF SECTION 07 2100**

**This page intentionally left blank.**

## **SECTION 07 4213.13**

### **FORMED METAL WALL PANELS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Concealed-fastener, lap-seam metal wall panels.
  - 2. Concealed- fastener, lap seam metal siding panels.

##### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
  - 2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal panel indicated with factory-applied finishes.
  - 1. Include Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.

##### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

##### **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.



## **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. UL-Certified, Portable Roll-Forming Equipment: UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing metal panels warranted by manufacturer to be the same as factory-formed products. Maintain UL certification of portable roll-forming equipment for duration of work.
- B. Petersen Aluminum Corp products establish a minimum of quality required. Tyler, TX, 800-441-8661
- C. Manufacturer and erector shall demonstrate experience of a minimum of five (5) years in this type of project.
- D. Sheet Metal Industry Standard: Comply with Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA) Architectural Sheet Metal Manual and National Roofing Contractors Association (NRCA) details applicable to wall panels and wall flashings.
- E. Panels shall be factory-produced only. No portable, installer-owned or installer-rented machines will be permitted

## **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Ordering: Comply with manufacturer's ordering instruction and lead time requirements to avoid construction delays.
- B. Deliver components, sheets, metal soffit panels and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal soffit panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- C. Unload, store and erect metal soffit panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting and surface damage.
- D. Stack metal wall panels on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weather tight and ventilated covering.
- E. Store metal wall panels to ensure dryness. Do not store metal wall panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting or other surface damage.
- F. Protect strippable protective coating on any metal coated product from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to the extent necessary for material installation.

## **1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of construction contiguous with metal wall panels by field measurements before fabrication

## **1.9 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

## **1.10 WARRANTY**

- A. Finish warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace wall panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finish within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Exposed Panels Finish – deterioration includes the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244 (varies for Award Blue/Cardinal Red)
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214 (varies for Award Blue/Cardinal Red)
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling or failure of a paint to adhere to a bare metal.
  - 2. Warranty Period (specifier to select):
    - a. 20 Years from the date of substantial completion

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Air Penetration: When tested per ASTM E-283 @ 6.24 PSF the air penetration shall be .005 or less when tested in accordance here.
- B. Water Penetration: When tested per ASTM E-331 @ 12.48 PSF for the 15 minute test period, the water penetration shall be none.
- C. Dynamic Water Penetration: When tested per AAMA 501 @ 15 PSF, the water penetration shall be none.
- D. Structural Performance: When tested per ASTM E 1592, withstand the effects of wind loads and deflection limits of the span as indicated on the drawings.
- E. Negative Load Testing per ASTM E-330: The panel shall have been tested per ASTM E-330 to show negative wind uplifts at spans of 1'0" through 4'0" spans, both double and triple spans and the Manufacturer shall provide a Negative Wind Uplift Table for this panel at the above-listed spans, with current 2.0 Safety Factor as per IBC current code and 1.65 Safety Factor as per US Corps of Engineers.

### **2.2 CONCEALED-FASTENER, LAP-SEAM METAL WALL PANELS**

- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal panels designed to be field assembled by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners and factory-applied sealant in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
- B. Profile to match existing, verify at project site.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Petersen Aluminum Corporation; Pac-Clad Flush Panel or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. AEP Span; A BlueScope Steel Company.
  - b. Alcoa Architectural Products (USA).
  - c. Berridge Manufacturing Company.
  - d. CENTRIA Architectural Systems.
  - e. Drexel Metals.
  - f. Fabral.
  - g. MBCI; a division of NCI Group, Inc.
2. Aluminum Sheet: Coil-coated sheet, ASTM B 209, alloy as standard with manufacturer, with temper as required to suit forming operations and structural performance required.
  - a. Thickness: 0.040 inch , 18 gauge.
  - b. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
  - c. Exterior Finish: Color anodized.
  - d. Color: To match existing, verify at project site. .
3. Panel Coverage: 12 inches .
4. Panel Height: 1 inch .

## **2.3 CONCEALED FASTENER, LAP SEAM METAL SIDING PANELS**

- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal liner panels designed for interior side walls and field assembled by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners in side laps. Include accessories required for a complete installation.
- B. Metal Liner Panels:
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Petersen Aluminum Corporation; Pac-Clad [Precision Series Highline M1] or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Alcoa Architectural Products
    - b. Architectural Metal Systems.
    - c. Berridge Manufacturing Company.
    - d. CENTRIA Architectural Systems.
    - e. Englert, Inc.
    - f. Fabral.
    - g. Flexospan Steel Buildings, Inc.
    - h. MBCI; a division of NCI Group, Inc.
  2. Aluminum Sheet: Coil-coated sheet, ASTM B 209, alloy as standard with manufacturer, with temper as required to suit forming operations and structural performance required.
    - a. Thickness: 0.040 inch, 18 gauge
    - b. Surface: Smooth, flat finish
    - c. Exterior Finish: Color anodized
    - d. Color: To match existing, verify at project site.
  3. Panel Coverage: 12.043"
  4. Seam Height: 1 3/8"

## **2.4 FABRICATION**

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements

demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.

- B. On-Site Fabrication: Subject to compliance with requirements of this Section, metal panels may be fabricated on-site using UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment if panels are of same profile and warranted by manufacturer to be equal to factory-formed panels. Fabricate in accordance with equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.
- C. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- D. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.
- E. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
  - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
  - 3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
  - 4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
  - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
  - 6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
    - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

## **2.5 FINISHES**

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Aluminum Panels and Accessories:
  - 1. Exposed Anodized Finish:
    - a. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
  - 2. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
    - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages in accordance with ASTM C 754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

### **3.3 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install metal panels in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
  - 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
  - 2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
  - 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
  - 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
  - 5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
  - 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
  - 7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
  - 8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.

B. Fasteners:

1. Steel Panels: Use stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
2. Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
3. Copper Panels: Use copper, stainless steel, or hardware-bronze fasteners.
4. Stainless Steel Panels: Use stainless steel fasteners.

C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.

D. Lap-Seam Metal Panels: Fasten metal panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.

1. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib. Apply panels and associated items true to line for neat and weathertight enclosure.
2. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal panels.
3. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
4. Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
5. Flash and seal panels with weather closures at perimeter of all openings.

E. Watertight Installation:

1. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal lapped joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend by manufacturer on side laps of nesting-type panels; and elsewhere as needed to make panels watertight.
2. Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
3. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch end lap, sealed with sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.

F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.

1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal wall panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal panel manufacturer.

G. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight.

1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and achieve waterproof performance.

2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

### **3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION 07 4213.13**

## **SECTION 07 5423**

### **THERMOPLASTIC-POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Adhered thermoplastic polyolefin (TPO) roofing system.
  - 2. Substrate board.
  - 3. Roof insulation.
  - 4. Cover board.
  - 5. Walkways.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking; and for wood-based, structural-use roof deck panels.
  - 2. Section 07 6200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof flashings and counterflashings.
  - 3. Section 07 7100 "Roof Specialties" for manufactured copings and roof edge flashings.
  - 4. Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.

##### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems" apply to Work of this Section.

##### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include roof plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including the following:
  - 1. Layout and thickness of insulation.
  - 2. Base flashings and membrane termination details.
  - 3. Flashing details at penetrations.
  - 4. Tapered insulation layout, thickness, and slopes.
  - 5. Tie-in with adjoining air barrier.



- C. Wind Uplift Resistance Submittal: For roofing system, indicating compliance with wind uplift performance requirements.

## **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is listed in FM Approvals' RoofNav for roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

## **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
  - 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

## **1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

## **1.8 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Special warranty includes roof membrane, base flashings, roof insulation, cover boards, substrate board, and other components of roofing system.
  - 2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General Performance: Installed roofing system and flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roof system and flashings shall remain watertight.
  - 1. Accelerated Weathering: Roof membrane shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G152, ASTM G154, or ASTM G155.
  - 2. Impact Resistance: Roof membrane shall resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D3746, ASTM D4272, or the "Resistance to Foot Traffic Test" in FM Approvals 4470.
- B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials shall be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roof membrane manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. Wind Uplift Resistance: Design roofing system to resist the following wind uplift pressures when tested according to FM Approvals 4474, UL 580, or UL 1897:
  - 1. Zone 1 (Roof Area Field): see drawings .
  - 2. Zone 2 (Roof Area Perimeter): see drawings .
  - 3. Zone 3 (Roof Area Corners): see drawings.

### **2.2 THERMOPLASTIC POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING**

- A. TPO Sheet: ASTM D6878/D6878M, internally fabric- or scrim-reinforced, fabric-backed TPO sheet.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.
    - b. Firestone Building Products.
    - c. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - d. Versico Roofing Systems.
  - 2. Thickness: 60 mils , nominal.
  - 3. Exposed Face Color: White .

### **2.3 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS**

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with other roofing components.
  - 1. Adhesive and Sealants: Comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's standard unreinforced TPO sheet flashing, 55 mils thick, minimum, of same color as TPO sheet.
- C. Prefabricated Pipe Flashings: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.

- D. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard , water based.
- E. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick; with anchors.
- F. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

## **2.4 SUBSTRATE BOARDS**

- A. Substrate Board: ASTM C1177/C1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum board or ASTM C1278/C1278M, fiber-reinforced gypsum board.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - c. National Gypsum Company.
    - d. USG Corporation.
  - 2. Thickness: 1/2 inch thick.
  - 3. Surface Finish: Unprimed.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to roof deck.

## **2.5 ROOF INSULATION**

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by TPO roof membrane manufacturer , approved for use in FM Approvals' RoofNav-listed roof assemblies.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2 , felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.
    - b. Firestone Building Products.
    - c. GAF.
    - d. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
  - 2. Compressive Strength: 20 psi .
  - 3. Size: 48 by 96 inches .
- C. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards.
  - 1. Material: Match roof insulation .
  - 2. Minimum Thickness: 1/4 inch.
  - 3. Slope:
    - a. Roof Field: 1/4 inch per foot unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Saddles and Crickets: 1/2 inch per foot unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

## **2.6 INSULATION ACCESSORIES**

- A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with other roofing system components.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners with metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and cover boards to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- C. Cover Board: ASTM C1177/C1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum board or ASTM C1278/C1278M fiber-reinforced gypsum board.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - b. National Gypsum Company.
    - c. USG Corporation.
  - 2. Thickness: 5/8 inch .
  - 3. Surface Finish: Factory primed Unprimed.

## **2.7 WALKWAYS**

- A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads or rolls, approximately 3/16 inch thick and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
  - 1. Size: Approximately 36 by 60 inches.
  - 2. Color: Contrasting with roof membrane.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
  - 2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
  - 3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Section 05 3100 "Steel Decking."
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing system installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.

- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION OF ROOFING, GENERAL**

- A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, FM Approvals' RoofNav assembly requirements, and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29.
- B. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at end of workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning Work on adjoining roofing.
- C. Install roof membrane and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing roofing system.

### **3.4 INSTALLATION OF SUBSTRATE BOARD**

- A. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, with end joints staggered not less than 24 inches in adjacent rows.
  - 1. At steel roof decks, install substrate board at right angle to flutes of deck.
    - a. Locate end joints over crests of steel roof deck.
  - 2. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
  - 3. Cut substrate board to fit tight around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
  - 4. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Approvals' RoofNav assembly requirements and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
  - 5. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to roofing system manufacturers' written instructions.
  - 6. Loosely lay substrate board over roof deck.

### **3.5 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION**

- A. Coordinate installing roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of workday.
- B. Comply with roofing system and roof insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Installation Over Metal Decking:
  - 1. Install base layer of insulation with joints staggered not less than 24 inches in adjacent rows.
    - a. Locate end joints over crests of decking.
    - b. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.

- c. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
  - d. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
  - e. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.
    - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
  - f. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
  - g. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
  - h. Loosely lay base layer of insulation units over substrate.
  - i. Mechanically attach base layer of insulation and substrate board using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to metal decks.
    - 1) Fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' RoofNav for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
    - 2) Fasten insulation to resist specified uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
2. Install upper layers of insulation and tapered insulation with joints of each layer offset not less than 12 inches from previous layer of insulation.
- a. Staggered end joints within each layer not less than 24 inches in adjacent rows.
  - b. Install with long joints continuous and with end joints staggered not less than 12 inches in adjacent rows.
  - c. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
  - d. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
  - e. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.
    - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
  - f. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
  - g. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
  - h. Loosely lay each layer of insulation units over substrate.
  - i. Adhere each layer of insulation to substrate using adhesive according to FM Approvals' RoofNav assembly requirements and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification, as follows:
    - 1) Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F of equiviscous temperature.
    - 2) Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
    - 3) Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

### **3.6 INSTALLATION OF COVER BOARDS**

- A. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches in each direction.
- 1. Trim cover board neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
  - 2. At internal roof drains, conform to slope of drain sump.
    - a. Trim cover board so that water flow is unrestricted.
  - 3. Cut and fit cover board tight to nailers, projections, and penetrations.
  - 4. Loosely lay cover board over substrate.

5. Adhere cover board to substrate using adhesive according to FM Approvals' RoofNav assembly requirements and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification, as follows:
  - a. Set cover board in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F of equiviscous temperature.
  - b. Set cover board in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
  - c. Set cover board in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
- B. Install slip sheet over cover board and beneath roof membrane.

### **3.7 INSTALLATION OF ADHERED ROOFING**

- A. Adhere roof membrane over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Unroll roof membrane and allow to relax before installing.
- C. Start installation of roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel and Owner's testing and inspection agency.
- D. Accurately align roof membrane, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- E. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of roof membrane at rate required by manufacturer, and allow to partially dry before installing roof membrane. Do not apply to splice area of roof membrane.
- F. Hot Roofing Asphalt: Apply a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt to substrate at temperature and rate required by manufacturer, and install fabric-backed roof membrane. Do not apply to splice area of roof membrane.
- G. Fabric-Backed Roof Membrane Adhesive: Apply to substrate at rate required by manufacturer, and install fabric-backed roof membrane.
- H. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten roof membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
- I. Apply roof membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- J. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap roof membrane, and hot-air weld side and end laps of roof membrane and sheet flashings, to ensure a watertight seam installation.
  1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of roof membrane and sheet flashings.
  2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily, and repair seam sample areas.
  3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roof membrane that do not comply with requirements.
- K. Spread sealant bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roof membrane in place with clamping ring.

### **3.8 INSTALLATION OF BASE FLASHING**

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories, and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate, and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Hot-air weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

### **3.9 INSTALLATION OF WALKWAYS**

- A. Flexible Walkways:
  - 1. Install flexible walkways at the following locations:
    - a. Retain one or more subparagraphs below. Revise to suit Project.
    - b. Perimeter of each rooftop unit.
    - c. Between each rooftop unit location, creating a continuous path connecting rooftop unit locations.
    - d. Between each roof hatch and each rooftop unit location or path connecting rooftop unit locations.
    - e. Top and bottom of each roof access ladder.
    - f. Between each roof access ladder and each rooftop unit location or path connecting rooftop unit locations.
    - g. Locations indicated on Drawings.
    - h. As required by roof membrane manufacturer's warranty requirements.
  - 2. Provide 6-inch clearance between adjoining pads.
  - 3. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

**END OF SECTION 07 5423**



**This page intentionally left blank.**

## **SECTION 07 6200**

### **SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.1 SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:

1. Formed roof-drainage sheet metal fabrications.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
2. Section 07 5423 "TPO Roofing" for materials and installation of sheet metal flashing and trim integral with roofing.
3. Section 07 7100 "Roof Specialties" for manufactured copings, roof-edge specialties, roof-edge drainage systems, reglets, and counterflashings.
4. Section 07 7200 "Roof Accessories" for set-on-type curbs, equipment supports, roof hatches, vents, and other manufactured roof accessory units.

##### **1.2 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

##### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

A. Product Data: For each of the following

1. Underlayment materials.
2. Elastomeric sealant.
3. Butyl sealant.
4. Epoxy seam sealer.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sheet metal and accessory indicated with factory-applied finishes.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish.

1. Sheet Metal Flashing: 12 inches long by actual width of unit, including finished seam and in required profile. Include fasteners, cleats, clips, closures, and other attachments.
2. Trim, Metal Closures, Expansion Joints, Joint Intersections, and Miscellaneous Fabrications: 12 inches long and in required profile. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.

3. Unit-Type Accessories and Miscellaneous Materials: Full-size Sample.
4. Anodized Aluminum Samples: Samples to show full range to be expected for each color required.

#### **1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
  1. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
  2. Protect stored sheet metal flashing and trim from contact with water.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies, including cleats, anchors, and fasteners, shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

#### **2.2 SHEET METALS**

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209 , alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required; with smooth, flat surface.
  1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
    - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range .
  3. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil .

## **2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
  - 1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
    - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
    - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
    - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
  - 2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
- C. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric polysulfide or silicone polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.

## **2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL**

- A. Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required.
  - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
  - 2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
  - 3. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered and obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
  - 4. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances:
  - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
  - 2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to tolerances specified.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.

1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
  2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal in accordance with cited sheet metal standard to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by cited sheet metal standard for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
- G. Seams:
1. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
  2. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use.
- H. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

## **2.5 ROOF-DRAINAGE SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS**

- A. Parapet Scuppers: Fabricate scuppers to dimensions required, with closure flange trim to exterior, 4-inch- wide wall flanges to interior, and base extending 4 inches beyond cant or tapered strip into field of roof. Fabricate from the following materials:
1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.
- B. Conductor Heads: Fabricate conductor heads with flanged back and stiffened top edge and of dimensions and shape required, complete with outlet tubes , exterior flange trim, . Fabricate from the following materials:
1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
  2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
  3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations of cited sheet metal standard that apply to installation characteristics required unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
1. Install fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
  2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of sealant.
  3. Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
  4. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.
  5. Install continuous cleats with fasteners spaced not more than 12 inches o.c.
  6. Space individual cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
  7. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil-canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
  8. Do not field cut sheet metal flashing and trim by torch.
  9. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
1. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
1. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet with no joints within 24 inches of corner or intersection.
  2. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
  3. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate wood blocking or sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches for nails and not less than 3/4 inch for wood screws .
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant.
    - b. Form joints to completely conceal sealant.

- c. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F , set joint members for 50 percent movement each way.
- d. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
  - 1) Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F .
- 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."

### **3.3 INSTALLATION OF ROOF-DRAINAGE SYSTEM**

- A. Install sheet metal roof-drainage items to produce complete roof-drainage system in accordance with cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-drainage system.
- B. Downspouts:
  - 1. Join sections with 1-1/2-inch telescoping joints.
  - 2. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls.
  - 3. Locate hangers at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c.
  - 4. Provide elbows at base of downspout to direct water away from building.
  - 5. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system.
- C. Parapet Scuppers:
  - 1. Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.
  - 2. Anchor scupper closure trim flange to exterior wall and seal with elastomeric sealant to scupper.
  - 3. Loosely lock front edge of scupper with conductor head.
  - 4. seal with elastomeric sealant exterior wall scupper flanges into back of conductor head.
- D. Conductor Heads: Anchor securely to wall, with elevation of conductor head rim aligning with the head of the masonry scupper opening. above .
- E. Expansion-Joint Covers: Install expansion-joint covers at locations and of configuration indicated on Drawings. Lap joints minimum of 4 inches in direction of water flow.

### **3.4 INSTALLATION OF WALL FLASHINGS**

- A. Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture in accordance with cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings.

### **3.5 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES**

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

**3.6 CLEANING**

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.

**3.7 PROTECTION**

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended in writing by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer.
- C. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures, as determined by Architect.

**END OF SECTION 07 6200**



**This page intentionally left blank.**

**SECTION 07 7100**  
**ROOF SPECIALTIES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Roof-edge specialties.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
  - 2. Section 07 6200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for custom- and site-fabricated sheet metal flashing and trim.
  - 3. Section 07 7200 "Roof Accessories" for set-on-type curbs, equipment supports, roof hatches, vents, and other manufactured roof accessory units.
  - 4. Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for field-applied sealants between roof specialties and adjacent materials.

**1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain roof specialties approved by manufacturer providing roofing-system warranty specified in Section 07 5423 TPO Roofing .

**1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Do not store roof specialties in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store roof specialties away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on roof specialties from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for the period of roof-specialty installation.

**1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Field Measurements: Verify profiles and tolerances of roof-specialty substrates by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

- B. Coordination: Coordinate roof specialties with flashing, trim, and construction of parapets, roof deck, roof and wall panels, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General Performance: Roof specialties shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of thermal movements. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F , ambient; 180 deg F , material surfaces.

### **2.2 ROOF-EDGE SPECIALTIES**

- A. Roof-Edge Fascia: Manufactured, two-piece, roof-edge fascia consisting of snap-on metal fascia cover in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet and a continuous metal receiver with integral drip-edge cleat to engage fascia cover and secure single-ply roof membrane. Provide matching corner units.
  - 1. Formed Aluminum Sheet Fascia Covers: Aluminum sheet, 0.040 inch thick .
    - a. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
    - b. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer .
    - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range .
  - 2. Corners: Factory mitered and mechanically clinched and sealed watertight.
  - 3. Splice Plates: Concealed , of same material, finish, and shape as fascia cover.
  - 4. Receiver: Manufacturer's standard material and thickness.

### **2.3 MATERIALS**

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.
- C. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, finished as follows:

### **2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to meet performance requirements. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Penetrating Fasteners: Gasketed screws with hex washer heads matching color of sheet metal.
2. Fasteners for Aluminum: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls, roof edges, and parapets for suitable conditions for roof specialties.
- C. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage where applicable, and securely anchored.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. General: Install roof specialties according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof specialties securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, underlayments, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete roof-specialty systems.
  1. Install roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation; with limited oil-canning and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
  2. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and sealant.
  3. Install roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in weathertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.
  4. Torch cutting of roof specialties is not permitted.
  5. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
  1. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof specialties for waterproof performance.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Allow for thermal expansion of exposed roof specialties.
  1. Space movement joints at a maximum of 12 feet with no joints within 18 inches of corners or intersections unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  2. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
- D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance .

- E. Seal concealed joints with butyl sealant as required by roofing-specialty manufacturer.
- F. Seal joints as required for weathertight construction. Place sealant to be completely concealed in joint. Do not install sealants at temperatures below 40 deg F.
- G. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pre-tin edges of sheets to be soldered to a width of 1-1/2 inches; however, reduce pre-tinning where pre-tinned surface would show in completed Work. Tin edges of uncoated copper sheets using solder for copper. Do not use torches for soldering. Heat surfaces to receive solder and flow solder into joint. Fill joint completely. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.

### **3.3 ROOF-EDGE SPECIALITIES INSTALLATION**

- A. Install cleats, cants, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor roof edgings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.

### **3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as roof specialties are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces, including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain roof specialties in a clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace roof specialties that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION 07 7100**

## **SECTION 07 9200**

### **JOINT SEALANTS**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
  - 2. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
  - 3. Latex joint sealants.

##### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.
- B. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
  - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
  - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
  - 4. Joint-sealant color.

##### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

##### **1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
  - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F .
  - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
  - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

## **1.6 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL**

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### **2.2 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested according to ASTM C 1248.
- B. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Sika Corporation; Joint Sealants.

### **2.3 MILDEW-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealants: Formulated for prolonged exposure to humidity with fungicide to prevent mold and mildew growth.
- B. Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

### **2.4 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Pecora Corporation.
  - b. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
  - c. Tremco Incorporated.

## **2.5 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING**

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. BASF Corporation.
    - b. Construction Foam Products; a division of Nomaco, Inc.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) , and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
  1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
  2. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or



by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
  - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  - 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193 unless otherwise indicated.

### **3.4 CLEANING**

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

### **3.5 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without

deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

### **3.6 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE**

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces not subject to significant movement.
  - 1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Control joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
    - b. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors windows and elevator entrances.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex .
  - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors .

**END OF SECTION 07 9200**

**This page intentionally left blank.**

## **SECTION 08 1113**

### **HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Interior standard steel doors and frames.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 7100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow-metal doors.

##### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings according to NAAMM-HMMA 803 or SDI A250.8.

##### **1.3 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Coordinate requirements for installation of door hardware, electrified door hardware, and access control and security systems.

##### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
  - 1. Elevations of each door type.
  - 2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
  - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
  - 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
  - 5. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
  - 6. Details of accessories.
  - 7. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.

## **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver hollow-metal doors and frames palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
  - 1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow-metal doors and frames vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum 4-inch- high wood blocking. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Ceco Door; ASSA ABLOY.
  - 2. Curries Company; ASSA ABLOY.
  - 3. Mesker Door Inc.
  - 4. Republic Doors and Frames.
  - 5. Steelcraft; an Allegion brand.

### **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Thermally Rated Door Assemblies: Provide door assemblies with U-factor of not more than 0.50 deg Btu/F x h x sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM C 518.

### **2.3 INTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES**

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 2; SDI A250.4, Level B. .
  - 1. Doors:
    - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
    - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches .
    - c. Face: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch .
    - d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush .
    - e. Edge Bevel: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges.
    - f. Core: Manufacturer's standard.

2. Frames:
  - a. Materials: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch .
  - b. Frames: Fabricated from same thickness material as adjacent door frame.
  - c. Construction: Knocked down or Face welded .
3. Exposed Finish: Prime .

## **2.4 FRAME ANCHORS**

- A. Jamb Anchors:
  1. Type: Anchors of minimum size and type required by applicable door and frame standard, and suitable for performance level indicated.
  2. Quantity: Minimum of three anchors per jamb, with one additional anchor for frames with no floor anchor. Provide one additional anchor for each 24 inches of frame height above 7 feet .
  3. Postinstalled Expansion Anchor: Minimum 3/8-inch- diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts, with manufacturer's standard pipe spacer.
- B. Material: ASTM A 879/A 879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z coating designation; mill phosphatized.

## **2.5 MATERIALS**

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- E. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- G. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 08 8000 "Glazing."

## **2.6 FABRICATION**

- A. Hollow-Metal Frames: Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as frames.

1. Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by welding , or by rigid mechanical anchors.
  2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware, and electrical wiring; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.
1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
  2. Comply with BHMA A156.115 for preparing hollow-metal doors and frames for hardware.
- C. Glazed Lites: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with mitered hairline joints.
1. Provide stops and moldings flush with face of door, and with beveled stops unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
  3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal doors and frames.
  4. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.
  5. Provide stops for installation with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches o.c. and not more than 2 inches o.c. from each corner.

## **2.7 STEEL FINISHES**

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.
- B. Factory Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, complying with SDI A250.3.
1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range .

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch up factory-applied finishes where spreaders are removed.

- B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install hollow-metal doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with approved Shop Drawings and with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Comply with SDI A250.11 .
  - 1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces without damage to completed Work.
    - a. Where frames are fabricated in sections, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch-up finishes.
    - b. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
  - 2. Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
  - 3. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout or mortar.
  - 4. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
  - 5. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal frames to the following tolerances:
    - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch , measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
    - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch , measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
    - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch , measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
    - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch , measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit and adjust hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below.
  - 1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors: Comply with SDI A250.8 .
- D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 08 8000 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.3 CLEANING AND TOUCHUP**

- A. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
- B. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Factory-Finish Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with same material used for factory finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.



- D. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of abraded areas of paint are specified in painting Sections.

**END OF SECTION 08 1113**

**SECTION 08 1613**

**FIBERGLASS EXTERIOR DOORS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.1 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Fiberglass Exterior Doors
- B. Pre-hung Systems and Slabs

**1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 3300
- B. Product Data: Submit door manufacturer current product literature, including installation instruction.
- C. Shop Drawings shall include:
  - 1. Indicate location, size, and hand of each door.
  - 2. Indicate dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
  - 3. Indicate dimensions and locations of cutouts.
  - 4. Indicate location and extent of hardware blocking.
  - 5. Indicate construction details not covered in Product Data.
  - 6. Indicate doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
- D. Samples: Provide finish samples for all products.
- E. Quality Assurance Submittals
  - 1. Design Data: Provide manufacturer test report numbers indicating product compliance with indicated requirements.
  - 2. Manufacturer Instructions: Provide manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- F. Closeout Submittals: Refer to Section 01 7700.

**1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver, store and handle materials and products in strict compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations and industry standards.
- B. Deliver and store assembly materials and components in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact. Protect from damage.

**1.4 WARRANTY**

- A. Manufacturer's Standard Warranty: Assemblies will be free from defects in materials and workmanship from the date of manufacture for the time periods indicated below:
  - 1. Commercial Limited Warranty
    - a. Door Slab: Commercial: 5 years.
    - b. Door Frames: 1 year.
    - c. Factory Pre-finish: 5 years.

- d. All other products, components, pre-finishes and options as listed above:

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURER**

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
1. Kolbe Windows and Doors – Heritage Series
  2. Jeld-Wen – Aurora Series
  3. Equal as approved by Architect, see section 01 2500.

### **2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. Fiberglass Skins: multiple layers of resins, tinted resins, base colors and reinforcing materials.
- B. Core: Foam, 13lb density weight per cubic ft.

### **2.3 FIBERGLASS ENTRANCE DOORS**

- A. Thickness: 1-3/4 inch for Slab Only Application.
- B. Door Style: To match existing, verify at project site.
- C. Door Shape: Squared
- D. Finish: FRP To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.

### **2.4 CONSTRUCTION ACCESSORIES**

- A. Sealants: Refer to Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealants.

### **2.5 FABRICATION**

- A. Skins: Two detailed fiberglass skins created in molds, which incorporates multiple layers of resins, tinted resins, base colors and reinforcing materials for greater structural strength.
- B. Frame & Core: Skins are adhered to engineered wood frames with exclusive core materials and bonding agents that permanently lock skin to frame.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.1 GENERAL**

- A. Install doors in accordance with manufacturer's installation guidelines and recommendations.

### **3.2 EXAMINATION**

- A. Inspect door prior to installation.
- B. Inspect rough opening for compliance with door manufacturer recommendations. Verify rough opening conditions are within recommended tolerances.

### **3.3 PREPARATION**

- A. Form and install sheet metal sill pan in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Prepare doors and assemble components for installation in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

**3.4 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed doors from damage.

**END OF SECTION 08 1613**

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**SECTION 08 4113**

**ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Storefront framing.

**1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
  - 2. Include full-size isometric details of each type of vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, showing the following:
    - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
    - b. Anchorage.
    - c. Expansion provisions.
    - d. Flashing and drainage.
  - 3. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
  - 4. Include point-to-point wiring diagrams showing the following:
    - a. Power requirements for each electrically operated door hardware.
    - b. Location and types of switches, signal device, conduit sizes, and number and size of wires.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.

1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- C. Structural-Sealant Glazing: Comply with ASTM C 1401 for design and installation of storefront systems.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain all components of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront system, including framing and accessories, from single manufacturer.

### **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
1. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand movements of supporting structure, including, but not limited to, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
  2. Failure also includes the following:
    - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
    - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
    - c. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
    - d. Failure of operating units.

### **2.3 STOREFRONT SYSTEMS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Kawneer North America, an Arconic company.
  2. Manko Window Systems, Inc.
  3. Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope.
  4. U.S. Aluminum; a brand of C.R. Laurence.
- B. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
1. Exterior Framing Construction: Thermally broken .
  2. Finish: Clear anodic finish .
  3. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.
  4. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
  5. Steel Reinforcement: As required by manufacturer.

- C. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.
- D. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- E. Insulated Spandrel Panels: Laminated, metal-faced flat panels with no deviations in plane exceeding 0.8 percent of panel dimension in width or length.
  - 1. Overall Panel Thickness: 1 inch .
  - 2. Exterior Skin: Aluminum.
    - a. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for finish and texture indicated .
    - b. Finish: Match framing system .
    - c. Texture: Smooth .
    - d. Backing Sheet: 0.125-inch- thick, corrugated, high-density polyethylene .
  - 3. Interior Skin: Aluminum.
    - a. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for finish and texture indicated .
    - b. Finish: Mill finish .
    - c. Texture: Smooth .
    - d. Backing Sheet: 0.125-inch- thick, corrugated, high-density polyethylene .
  - 4. Thermal Insulation Core: Manufacturer's standard rigid, closed-cell, polyisocyanurate board .
  - 5. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
    - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
    - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

## **2.4 MATERIALS**

- A. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 .
- B. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221 .
- C. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429/B 429M.
- D. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
- E. Steel Reinforcement:
  - 1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - 2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
  - 3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
  - 4. Primer: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.

## **2.5 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.



1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
  2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.

## **2.6 FABRICATION**

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
  2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
  3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
  4. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
1. At interior and exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
- E. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

## **2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES**

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Prepare surfaces that are in contact with structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. General:
  - 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Do not install damaged components.
  - 3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
  - 4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
  - 5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
  - 6. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Protection:
  - 1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
  - 2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- C. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed, as specified in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants," to produce weathertight installation.
- D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.
- E. Install weatherseal sealant according to Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" and according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to produce weatherproof joints. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.

### **3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES**

- A. Erection Tolerances: Install aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
  - 1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet ; 1/4 inch in 40 feet .
  - 2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet ; 1/4 inch in 40 feet .
  - 3. Alignment:
    - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch .
    - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch .
    - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch .
  - 4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet ; 1/2 inch over total length.

**END OF SECTION 08 4113**

**SECTION 08 5113**  
**ALUMINUM WINDOWS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes aluminum windows for exterior locations.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 4113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts" for coordinating finish among aluminum fenestration units.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, glazing and fabrication methods, dimensions of individual components and profiles, hardware, and finishes for aluminum windows.
- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum windows.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, hardware, accessories, insect screens, operational clearances, and details of installation, including anchor, flashing, and sealant installation.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer capable of fabricating aluminum windows that meet or exceed performance requirements indicated and of documenting this performance by test reports and calculations.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An installer acceptable to aluminum window manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain aluminum windows from single source from single manufacturer.

### **2.2 WINDOW PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Product Standard: Comply with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 for definitions and minimum standards of performance, materials, components, accessories, and fabrication unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
1. Window Certification: AAMA certified with label attached to each window.
- B. Performance Class and Grade: AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 as follows:
1. Minimum Performance Class: CW .
  2. Minimum Performance Grade: 30 .
- C. Thermal Transmittance: NFRC 100 maximum whole-window U-factor of 0.30 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F .
- D. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient (SHGC): NFRC 200 maximum whole-window SHGC of 0.30 .

### **2.3 ALUMINUM WINDOWS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. EFCO Corporation.
  2. Kawneer North America, an Arconic company.
  3. Manko Window Systems, Inc.
  4. Wausau Window and Wall Systems; Apogee Wausau Group, Inc.
- B. Types: Provide the following types in locations indicated on Drawings:
1. Fixed.
- C. Frames and Sashes: Aluminum extrusions complying with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.
1. Thermally Improved Construction: Fabricate frames, sashes, and muntins with an integral, concealed, low-conductance thermal barrier located between exterior materials and window members exposed on interior side in a manner that eliminates direct metal-to-metal contact.
- D. Insulating-Glass Units: ASTM E2190.
1. Glass: ASTM C1036, Type 1, Class 1, q3.
    - a. Tint: .
    - b. Kind: Fully tempered where indicated on Drawings .
  2. Filling: Fill space between glass lites with argon.

3. Low-E Coating: Pyrolytic on second surface .

- E. Glazing System: Manufacturer's standard factory-glazing system that produces weathertight seal .
- F. Weather Stripping: Provide full-perimeter weather stripping for each operable sash unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Fasteners: Noncorrosive and compatible with window members, trim, hardware, anchors, and other components.
  - 1. Exposed Fasteners: Do not use exposed fasteners to greatest extent possible. For application of hardware, use fasteners that match finish hardware being fastened.

## **2.4 FABRICATION**

- A. Fabricate aluminum windows in sizes indicated. Include a complete system for assembling components and anchoring windows.
- B. Glaze aluminum windows in the factory.
- C. Weather strip each operable sash to provide weathertight installation.
- D. Weep Holes: Provide weep holes and internal passages to conduct infiltrating water to exterior.
- E. Provide water-shed members above side-hinged sashes and similar lines of natural water penetration.
- F. Complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work in the factory to greatest extent possible. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation.

## **2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## **2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES**

- A. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.

- B. Class II, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A31 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class II, clear coating 0.010 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
- C. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine openings, substrates, structural support, anchorage, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify rough opening dimensions, levelness of sill plate, and operational clearances.
- C. Examine wall flashings, vapor retarders, water and weather barriers, and other built-in components to ensure weathertight window installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing windows, hardware, accessories, and other components. For installation procedures and requirements not addressed in manufacturer's written instructions, comply with installation requirements in ASTM E2112.
- B. Install windows level, plumb, square, true to line, without distortion or impeding thermal movement, anchored securely in place to structural support, and in proper relation to wall flashing and other adjacent construction to produce weathertight construction.
- C. Install windows and components to drain condensation, water penetrating joints, and moisture migrating within windows to the exterior.
- D. Separate aluminum and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action at points of contact with other materials.

### **3.3 ADJUSTING, CLEANING, AND PROTECTION**

- A. Adjust operating sashes and hardware for a tight fit at contact points and weather stripping for smooth operation and weathertight closure.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces immediately after installing windows. Avoid damaging protective coatings and finishes. Remove excess sealants, glazing materials, dirt, and other substances.
  - 1. Keep protective films and coverings in place until final cleaning.

- C. Remove and replace glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.
- D. Protect window surfaces from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. If contaminating substances do contact window surfaces, remove contaminants immediately according to manufacturer's written instructions.

**END OF SECTION 08 5113**



**This page intentionally left blank.**

## **SECTION 08 7100**

### **DOOR HARDWARE**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Mechanical door hardware for the following:
    - a. Swinging doors.
  - 2. Cylinders for door hardware specified in other Sections.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 1113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames" .
  - 2. Section 08 4113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts" for entrance door hardware, including cylinders.

##### **1.3 COORDINATION**

- A. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- B. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware, keying, and access control with Owner's security consultant.

##### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant. Coordinate door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.
  - 1. Submittal Sequence: Submit door hardware schedule concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings. Coordinate submission of door hardware

- schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate the fabrication of other work that is critical in Project construction schedule.
2. Format: Use same scheduling sequence and format and use same door numbers as in door hardware schedule in the Contract Documents.
  3. Content: Include the following information:
    - a. Identification number, location, hand, fire rating, size, and material of each door and frame.
    - b. Locations of each door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings on floor plans and to door and frame schedule.
    - c. Complete designations, including name and manufacturer, type, style, function, size, quantity, function, and finish of each door hardware product.
    - d. Description of electrified door hardware sequences of operation and interfaces with other building control systems.
    - e. Fastenings and other installation information.
    - f. Explanation of abbreviations, symbols, and designations contained in door hardware schedule.
    - g. Mounting locations for door hardware.
    - h. List of related door devices specified in other Sections for each door and frame.

## **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project site.
- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with the final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package.
- C. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.
- D. Deliver keys and permanent cores to Owner by registered mail or overnight package service.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of door hardware from single manufacturer.

### **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Means of Egress Doors: Latches do not require more than 15 lbf to release the latch. Locks do not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.
- B. Accessibility Requirements: For door hardware on doors in an accessible route, comply with the DOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design".
  1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf.
  2. Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements:
    - a. Interior, Non-Fire-Rated Hinged Doors: 5 lbf applied perpendicular to door.

3. Bevel raised thresholds with a slope of not more than 1:2. Provide thresholds not more than 1/2 inch high.
4. Adjust door closer sweep periods so that, from an open position of 90 degrees, the door will take at least 5 seconds to move to a position of 12 degrees from the latch.
5. Adjust spring hinges so that, from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 1.5 seconds to move to the closed position.

## **2.3 SCHEDULED DOOR HARDWARE**

- A. Provide products for each door that comply with requirements indicated in Part 2 and door hardware schedule.
  1. Door hardware is scheduled on Drawings .

## **2.4 HINGES**

- A. Hinges: BHMA A156.1.

## **2.5 CONTINUOUS HINGES**

- A. Continuous Geared Hinges: BHMA A156.26 Grade 1-600 certified continuous geared hinge; minimum 0.120-inch-thick extruded 6060 T6 aluminum alloy hinge leaves with minimum overall width of 4 inches; hinges are non-handed, fabricated to full height of door and frame and to template screw locations; with components finished after milling and drilling are complete, prepare for electrical cutouts.
- B. Continuous, Gear-Type Hinges: Extruded-aluminum, pinless, geared hinge leaves joined by a continuous extruded-aluminum channel cap; with concealed, self-lubricating thrust bearings.

## **2.6 MECHANICAL LOCKS AND LATCHES**

- A. Lock Functions: As indicated in door hardware schedule.
- B. Cylindrical Locksets, Grade 1 (Heavy Duty); ANSI/BHMA A156.2, Series 4000, Grade 1 certified. ;

## **2.7 LOCK CYLINDERS**

- A. Lock Cylinders: Tumbler type, constructed from brass or bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver. Provide cylinder from same manufacturer of locking devices.
- B. Standard Lock Cylinders: BHMA A156.5; Grade 1 permanent cores; face finished to match lockset.
  1. Core Type: Removable.
- C. Construction Master Keys: Provide cylinders with feature that permits voiding of construction keys without cylinder removal. Provide 10 construction master keys.

- D. Construction Cores: Provide construction cores that are replaceable by permanent cores. Provide 10 construction master keys.

## **2.8 KEYING**

- A. Keying System: Factory registered, complying with guidelines in BHMA A156.28, appendix. Provide one extra key blank for each lock.
  - 1. Master Key System: Change keys and a master key operate cylinders.
    - a. Provide three cylinder change keys and five master keys.
- B. Keys: Brass.

## **2.9 SURFACE CLOSERS**

- A. Surface Closers: BHMA A156.4; rack-and-pinion hydraulic type with adjustable sweep and latch speeds controlled by key-operated valves and forged-steel main arm. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for size of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Provide factory-sized closers, adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.

## **2.10 OVERHEAD STOPS AND HOLDERS**

- A. Overhead Stops and Holders: BHMA A156.8.

## **2.11 THRESHOLDS**

- A. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21; fabricated to full width of opening indicated.

## **2.12 FABRICATION**

- A. Manufacturer's Nameplate: Do not provide products that have manufacturer's name or trade name displayed in a visible location except in conjunction with required fire-rating labels and as otherwise approved by Architect.
- B. Base Metals: Produce door hardware units of base metal indicated, fabricated by forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness. Furnish metals of a quality equal to or greater than that of specified door hardware units and BHMA A156.18.
- C. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws that comply with commercially recognized industry standards for application intended, except aluminum fasteners are not permitted. Provide Phillips flat-head screws with finished heads to match surface of door hardware unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Concealed Fasteners: For door hardware units that are exposed when door is closed, except for units already specified with concealed fasteners. Do not use through bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed unless it is the only

means of securely attaching the door hardware. Where through bolts are used on hollow door and frame construction, provide sleeves for each through bolt.

## **2.13 FINISHES**

- A. Provide finishes complying with BHMA A156.18 as indicated in door hardware schedule.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Steel Doors and Frames: For surface-applied door hardware, drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI/SDI A250.6.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
  - 1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
  - 2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
- B. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.

1. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
  2. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
- C. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule, but not fewer than the number recommended by manufacturer for application indicated or one hinge for every 30 inches of door height, whichever is more stringent, unless other equivalent means of support for door, such as spring hinges or pivots, are provided.
- D. Intermediate Offset Pivots: Where offset pivots are indicated, provide intermediate offset pivots in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule, but not fewer than one intermediate offset pivot per door and one additional intermediate offset pivot for every 30 inches of door height greater than 90 inches .
- E. Lock Cylinders: Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.
1. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as directed by Owner.
  2. Furnish permanent cores to Owner for installation.
- F. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
1. Do not notch perimeter gasketing to install other surface-applied hardware.
- G. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
- H. Door Bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
1. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Spring Hinges: Adjust to achieve positive latching when door is allowed to close freely from an open position of 70 degrees and so that closing time complies with accessibility requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately three months after date of Substantial Completion, Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant shall examine and readjust each item of door hardware, including adjusting operating forces, as necessary to ensure function of doors, door hardware, and electrified door hardware.

### **3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- B. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.

- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure that door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 08 7100**



**This page intentionally left blank.**

## **SECTION 08 8000**

### **GLAZING**

#### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

##### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Glass for windows.
  - 2. Glazing sealants and accessories.

##### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
- C. IBC: International Building Code.
- D. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

##### **1.3 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

##### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications for Insulating-Glass Units with Sputter-Coated, Low-E Coatings: A qualified insulating-glass manufacturer who is approved by coated-glass manufacturer.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.

##### **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written instructions for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

## **1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
  - 1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F .

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each glass type.
  - 1. Obtain tinted glass from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.

### **2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined according to the IBC and ASTM E 1300.

### **2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL**

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.

### **2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS**

- A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.
- B. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.

### **2.5 INSULATING GLASS**

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190.

1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard polyisobutylene and hot-melt butyl primary and secondary sealants.

## **2.6 GLAZING SEALANTS**

### **A. General:**

1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: from manufacturer standards.

### **B. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.**

## **2.7 GLAZING TAPES**

### **A. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:**

1. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
2. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

## **2.8 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS**

### **A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, with requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.**

### **B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.**

### **C. Setting Blocks:**

1. Neoprene with a Shore A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
2. Type recommended by sealant or glass manufacturer.

### **D. Spacers:**

1. Neoprene blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
2. Type recommended by sealant or glass manufacturer.

### **E. Edge Blocks:**

1. Neoprene with a Shore A durometer hardness per manufacturer's written instructions.

2. Type recommended by sealant or glass manufacturer.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
  1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
  2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
  3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
  4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

### **3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL**

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.
- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches .
  1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and

- glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
2. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
  - H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
  - I. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.
  - J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
  - K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

### **3.4 TAPE GLAZING**

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

### **3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)**

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.

- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

### **3.6 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)**

- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

### **3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Immediately after installation remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
  - 1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.
- C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.
- D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION 08 8000**

**SECTION 08 8700**  
**WINDOW FILM**

**PART 1 – GENERAL**

**1.1 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. .Safety and security window film. (Clear Microlayered with Sun Contol)
- B. Film attachment system (Impact Protection Adhesive)

**1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Fire Performance: Surface burning characteristics when tested in accordance ASTM E 84:
  - 1. Flame Spread: 25, maximum
  - 2. Smoke Developed: 450, maximum

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
  - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  - 3. Installation methods.
- B. Verification Samples: For each film specified, two samples representing actual film color and pattern.
- C. Performance Submittals: Provide laboratory data of emissivity and calculated window U-Factors for various outdoor temperatures based upon established calculation procedure defined by the ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals, Chapter 29, or Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory Window 5.2 Computer Program.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: All primary products specified in this section will be supplied by a single manufacturer with a minimum of ten years experience.
  - 1. Provide documentation that the adhesive used on the specified films is a Pressure Sensitive Adhesive (PSA).
- B. Installer Qualifications: All products listed in this section are to be installed by a single installer with a minimum of five years demonstrated experience in installing products of the same type and scope as specified.
  - 1. Provide documentation that the installer is authorized by the Manufacturer to perform Work specified in this section.
  - 2. Provide a commercial building reference list of 5 properties where the installer has applied window film. This list will include the following information:



- a. Name of building.
  - b. The name and telephone number of a management contact.
  - c. Type of glass.
  - d. Type of film.
  - e. Amount of film installed.
  - f. Date of completion.
3. Provide a Glass Stress Analysis of existing glass and proposed glass/film combination as recommended by the film manufacturer.
  4. Provide an EFilm application analysis to determine available energy cost reduction and savings.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Store and dispose of hazardous materials, and materials contaminated by hazardous materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's recommended limits.

### PART 2 – PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: 3M Window Film, which is located at 3M Center BLDG. 0235-02-S-27; St. Paul, MN 55144-1000; Toll Free Tel: 866-499-8857; Tel: 651-733-2222; Fax: 651-737-3446; Email: 3Mrenewableenergy@mmm.com; Web: www.3m.com/windowfilm

#### 2.2 MICROLAYERED SAFETY AND SECURITY WINDOW FILM WITH SUN CONTROL

- A. 3M Ultra Night Vision S25: Optically clear polyester film comprised of 28 micro-layers, laminated to a metalized polyester film. Additional film layer is added for color and performance, with a durable abrasion resistant coating over on surface and a pressure sensitive adhesive on the other. The film color is derived from the metal coating and the product will no contain dyed polyester.
  1. Film Type: Ultra NV S25.
  2. Physical/ Mechanical Performance Properties:
    - a. Film Color: Tinted – Derived from metal coatings.
    - b. Thickness: Nominal 6.0 mils (0.15mm)
    - c. Tensile Strength (ASTM D 882): 30,000 psi.
    - d. Break Strength (ASTM D 882)(Per Inch Width): 120lbs.
    - e. Tear Resistance (ASTM D 1004): Greater than 780lbs.
    - f. Puncture Propagation Tear (ASTM D 2582): 7.5 lbs.
    - g. Young's Modulus (ASTM D 882): 500 kpsi nominal.

3. Solar Performance Properties: Film applied to ¼ Inch (6.4mm) thick clear glass.
    - a. Visible Light Transmission (ASTM E 903): 27 percent.
    - b. Visible Reflection (ASTM E 903): Not more than 28 percent.
    - c. Ultraviolet Transmission (ASTM E 903): Less than 1 percent.
    - d. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (ASTM E 903): 0.38.
  4. Uniformity: No noticeable pin holes, streaks, thin spots, scratches, banding or other optical defects.
  5. Variation in Total Transmission across the Width: Less than 2 percent over the average at any portion along the length.
  6. Identification: Labeled as to Manufacturer as listed in this section.
  7. Impact Resistance for Safety Glazing: Tested on ¼ inch (6.4mm) annealed glass.
    - a. Safety Rating (CPSC 16 CFR, Part 1201): Category II (400 ft.-lbs).
    - b. Safety Rating (ANSI Z97.1): Class A, Unlimited Size.
  8. Windstorm Protection:
    - a. Safety film component shall pass impact of Medium Large Missile "C" and withstand subsequent pressure cycling (per ASTM E 1996 and E 1886) at +/- 70 psf Design Pressure with use of 3M Impact Protection Adhesive attachment system.
    - b. Safety film component shall pass impact of Small Missile "A" and withstand subsequent pressure cycling (per ASTMs E 1996 and E 1886) at +/- psf Design Pressure with use of 3M Impact Protection Adhesive attachment system.
  9. Bomb Blast Mitigation: Independent testing with results from high explosive arena blast testing.
    - a. GSA Level 2 rating with minimum blast load of 4 psi overpressure and 28psi\*msec blast impulse.
    - b. GSA Level 3B rating with minimum blast load of 9 psi overpressure and 49 psi\*msec blast impulse.
    - c. ASTM F1642 rating of "Low Hazard" with minimum blast load of 8 psi overpressure and 42 psi\*msec blast impulse.
- B. 3M Impact Protection Profile (Ipp): Weatherable, flexible-mechanical style film attachment made of extruded rubber profile with two strips of double coated foam tape: one strip for bonding to applied film and the other strip for bonding to the window frame.
1. 3M Impact Protection Profile, BP-700
    - a. Total width: 1.0 inches.

- b. Tape width: .0.5 inches.
- 2. 3M Impact Protection Profile, BP-950.
  - a. Total width 1.3 inches.
  - b. Tape width: 0.625 inches.
- 3. Material Properties:
  - a. Full Adhesion: 1-2 days (25 degrees C, 50% RH)
  - b. Ultimate Tensile Strength (ASTM D412):>20,500 psi
  - c. Ultimate Elongation (ASTM D412): 400%
  - d. Break Strength, Die B (ASTM D624):>71 ppi
  - e. Durometer Hardness, Shore A: (ASTM D2240): 70 pts
- 4. Uniformity: Product shall have uniform consistency and appearance.
- 5. Flammability: Class A Interior Finish for Buildings.
- 6. Windborn Debris Protection:
  - a. As part of a filmed glass system, film attachment shall demonstrate ability to withstand Small Missile A impact, with subsequent pressure cycling (perASTMs E 1996 and E1886) at +/- 50 psf design pressure.
- 7. Bomb Blast Mitigation:
  - a. GSA Level "2" rating (minimal hazard) with blast load of 4 psi overpressure and 28 psi\*msec blast impulse.
  - b. GSA level "3B" rating (low hazard) with minimum blast load of 10 psi overpressure and 89 psi\*msec blast impulse.
  - c. ASTM F1642 rating of "Low Hazard" with minimum blast load of 4 psi over pressure and 28psi\*msec blast impulse.

### **PART 3 – EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

##### **A. Film Examination:**

- 1. If preparation of glass surfaces is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect in writing of deviations from manufacture's recommended installation tolerances and conditions
  - a. Glass surfaces receiving new film should first be examined to verify that they are free from defects and imperfections, which will affect the final appearance.
- 2. Do not proceed with installation until glass surfaces have been properly prepared and deviations from manufacturer's recommended tolerances are corrected. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result under the project conditions.

3. Commencement of installation constitutes acceptance of conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.
- C.. Refer to Manufacturer's installation instructions for methods of preparation for Impact Protection Adhesive or Impact Protection Profile film attachment systems.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Film Installation, General:
  1. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  2. Cut film edges neatly and square at a uniform distance of 1/8 inch (3mm) to 1/16 (1.5mm) of window sealant. Use new blade tips after 3 to 4 cuts.
  3. Spray the slip solution, composed of one capful of baby shampoo or dishwashing liquid to 1 gallon of water, on window glass and adhesive to facilitate proper positioning of film.
  4. Apply film to glass and lightly spray film with slip solution.
  5. Squeegee from top to bottom of window. Spray slip solution to film and squeegee a second time.
  6. Bump film edge with lint-free towel wrapped around edge of a 5-way tool.
  7. Upon completion of film application, allow 30 days for moisture from film installation to dry thoroughly, and to allow film to dry flat with no moisture dimples when viewed under normal viewing conditions.
  8. if completing an exterior application, check with the manufacturer as to whether edge sealing is required.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove left over material and debris from Work area. Use necessary means to protect film before, during and after installation.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.
- C. After application of film, wash film using common window cleaning solutions, including ammonia solutions, 30 days after application. Do not use abrasive type cleaning agents and bristle brushes to avoid scratching film. Use synthetic sponges or soft cloths.

**END OF SECTION 08 8700**

**SECTION 09 5123**  
**ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Acoustical tiles for interior ceilings.
  - 2. Fully concealed, direct-hung, suspension systems.

**1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 6 inches in size.

**1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Furnish extra material that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

**1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver acoustical tiles, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical tiles, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

**1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical tile ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
  - 1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical tile ceiling installation.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

A. Source Limitations:

1. Suspended Acoustical Tile Ceilings: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling tile and its suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.

### **2.2 ACOUSTICAL TILES**

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
2. CertainTeed Corporation.
3. USG Corporation.

B. Acoustical Tile Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard tiles of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by type, form, pattern, acoustical rating, and light reflectance unless otherwise indicated.

C. Classification: Provide tiles as follows:

1. Type and Form: As indicated on drawings .
2. Pattern: As indicated on drawings .

D. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range .

E. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): Not less than 20 .

F. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): Not less than 0.60 .

G. Edge/Joint Detail: Square, kerfed, and rabbeted; tongue and grooved; or butt .

H. Thickness: 3/4 inch .

I. Antimicrobial Treatment: Manufacturer's standard broad spectrum, antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273, ASTM D 3274, or ASTM G 21 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.

### **2.3 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM**

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
2. USG Corporation.

- B. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard, direct-hung, fully concealed, metal suspension system and accessories of type, structural classification, and finish indicated that complies with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635/C 635M.

## **2.4 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
- B. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires as follows:
  - 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
  - 2. Stainless-Steel Wire: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Type 304, nonmagnetic.
  - 3. Size: Wire diameter sufficient for its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but not less than required by manufacturer.

## **2.5 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  - 2. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - 3. USG Corporation.
- B. Extruded-Aluminum Edge Moldings and Trim: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's extruded-aluminum edge moldings and trim of profile indicated or referenced by manufacturer's designations, including splice plates, corner pieces, and attachment and other clips, complying with seismic design requirements.
  - 1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with ASTM C 635/C 635M and coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing and substrates to which acoustical tile ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine acoustical tiles before installation. Reject acoustical tiles that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.



### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical tiles to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width tiles at borders unless otherwise indicated, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.
- B. Layout openings for penetrations centered on the penetrating items.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION OF SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS**

- A. Install suspended acoustical tile ceilings according to ASTM C 636/C 636M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
  - 2. Splay hangers only where required and, if permitted with fire-resistance-rated ceilings, to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  - 4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly to structure or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and the type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
  - 7. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
  - 8. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
  - 9. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
  - 10. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
  - 11. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical tiles.

1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
  2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical tiles as follows:
1. As indicated on reflected ceiling plans.
- G. Install acoustical tiles in coordination with suspension system and exposed moldings and trim. Place splines or suspension-system flanges into kerfed edges of tiles so tile-to-tile joints are interlocked.
1. Fit adjoining tiles to form flush, tight joints. Scribe and cut tiles for accurate fit at borders and around penetrations through ceiling.
  2. Hold tile field in compression by inserting leaf-type, spring-steel spacers between tiles and moldings, spaced 12 inches o.c.

### **3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES**

- A. Suspended Ceilings: Install main and cross runners level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet , non-cumulative.
- B. Moldings and Trim: Install moldings and trim to substrate and level with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet , non-cumulative.

### **3.5 ADJUSTING**

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical tile ceilings, including trim and edge moldings. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage.
- B. Remove and replace tiles and other ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

**END OF SECTION 09 5123**

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**SECTION 09 6513**

**RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Thermoplastic-rubber base.

**1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

**1.3 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials , from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

**1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F.

**1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F , in spaces to receive resilient products during the following periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F .
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 THERMOPLASTIC-RUBBER BASE**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - 1. Johnsonite; a Tarkett company.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TP (rubber, thermoplastic).
  - 1. Group: I (solid, homogeneous) .
  - 2. Style and Location:
    - a. Style B, Cove: Provide in areas indicated on Drawings .
- C. Thickness: 0.125 inch .
- D. Height: As indicated on Drawings.
- E. Lengths: Cut lengths 48 inches long or coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- F. Outside Corners: Job formed .
- G. Inside Corners: Job formed .
- H. Colors: As indicated on Drawings .

### **2.2 INSTALLATION MATERIALS**

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.
- C. Metal Edge Strips: Anodized aluminum, style as indicated on Drawings , of height required to protect exposed edges of flooring, and in maximum available lengths to minimize running joints.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- C. Do not install resilient products until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
  1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- D. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

### **3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- G. Job-Formed Corners:
  1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
    - a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
  2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
    - a. Miter or cope corners to minimize open joints.

### **3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.

- B. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

### **3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
  - 3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 09 6513**

**SECTION 09 6700  
FLUID-APPLIED FLOORING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Fluid-applied flooring for Concrete

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. SSPC-SP 1 - Solvent Cleaning
- B. SSPC-SP 2 - Hand Tool Cleaning
- C. SSPC-SP 3 - Power Tool Cleaning
- D. SSPC-SP 13 / NACE No. 6 Surface Preparation for Concrete
- E. ASTM F1869 - Moisture Test by use of Calcium Chloride
- F. ASTM D4258 - Standard Practice for Cleaning Concrete
- G. ASTM D4259 - Standard Practice for Abrading Concrete
- H. ASTM D4260 - Standard Practice for Etching Concrete
- I. ASTM D4263 - Plastic Sheet Method for Checking Moisture in Concrete
- J. ICRI # 310.2 - Surface Preparation of Concrete

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each paint and coating product should include:
  - 1. Product characteristics
  - 2. Surface preparation instructions and recommendations
  - 3. Primer requirements and finish specification
  - 4. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations
  - 5. Application methods
  - 6. Clean-up information
- B. Selection Samples: Submit a complete set of color chips that represent the full range of manufacturer's color samples available.
- C. Coating Maintenance Manual: upon conclusion of the project, the Contractor or paint manufacture/supplier shall furnish a coating maintenance manual, such as Sherwin-Williams "Custodian Paint Maintenance Manual" report or equal. Manual shall include an Area Summary with finish schedule, Area Detail designating where each product/color/finish was used, product



data pages, Safety Data Sheets, care and cleaning instructions, touch-up procedures, and color samples of each color and finish used.

#### **1.4 MOCK-UP**

- A. Include a mock-up if the project size and/or quality warrant taking such a precaution. The following is one example of how a mock-up on a large project might be specified. When deciding on the extent of the mock-up, consider all the major different types of painting on the project.
- B. Finish surfaces for verification of products, colors, & sheens
- C. Finish area designated by Architect
- D. Provide samples that designate prime & finish coats
- E. Do not proceed with remaining work until the Architect approves the mock-up samples

#### **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Delivery: Deliver manufacturer's unopened containers to the work site. Packaging shall bear the manufacturer's name, label, and the following list of information:
  - 1. Product name, and type (description)
  - 2. Application & use instructions
  - 3. Surface preparation
  - 4. VOC content
  - 5. Environmental handling and an SDS
  - 6. Batch date
  - 7. Color number
- B. Storage: Store and dispose of solvent-based materials, and materials used with solvent-based materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction. Store materials in an area that is within the acceptable temperature range, per manufacturer's instructions. Protect from freezing.
- C. Handling: Maintain a clean, dry storage area, to prevent contamination or damage to the coatings.

#### **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not apply coatings under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer:
  - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
- B. When submitting request for substitution, provide complete product data specified above under Submittals, for each substitute product.

### **2.2 APPLICATION**

- A. Use this article to define the scope of painting if not fully defined in a Finish Schedule or on the drawings. This article must be carefully edited to reflect the surfaces actually found on the project. In some cases, it may be enough to use the first paragraph that says, in effect, "paint everything" along with a list of items not to paint, without exhaustively defining all the different surfaces and items that must be painted.
- B. If the project involves repainting some but not all existing painted surfaces, be sure to indicate the extent of the repainting.
- C. The descriptions of each system can also be used to further refine the definition of what is to be coated.
- D. Surfaces to be coated: Concrete floors.

### **2.3 SCHEDULE INDEX: INTERIOR FLOORING**

- A. Concrete Floors: Light Duty Industrial / Commercial
  - 1. Water Based Epoxy Primer / Water Based Polyamine Epoxy Systems

### **2.4 SCHEDULE**

- A. Water Based Epoxy Primer / Water Based Epoxy Systems
  - 1. Stencil/Pigmented Colored Coats (Logo Design):
    - a. Prime Coat: B70W8161 Armorseal 8100 Water Based Epoxy Floor Coating – Satin Finish tinted to the choice of color. (Reduced with one pint of water per gallon. 2.0 - 4.0 mils dry per coat)
    - b. Finish Coat: B70W8161 Armorseal 8100 Water Based Epoxy Floor Coating – Satin Finish tinted to the choice of color.
    - c. Coordinate logo design and color with owner and Architect.
  - 2. Clear Coats:

- a. Prime Coat: B70T8164 Armorseal 8100 Water Based Epoxy Floor Coating – Satin Finish – Clear Base (reduced with one pint of water per gallon. 2.0 - 4.0 mils dry per coat)
  - b. Finish Coat: B70T8164 Armorseal 8100 Water Based Epoxy Floor Coating – Satin Finish – Clear Base (2.0 - 4.0 mils dry per coat)
3. For Clear applications, use the Ultra Deep Base, reduce 5% with potable water. When first mixed and applied, the material is white, but will dry Clear. DO NOT exceed 10 mils WFT. Avoid puddling material at edges or in depressions as it may not dry clear.

## **2.5 MATERIALS - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

### **A. Paints and Coatings - General:**

1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide factory-mixed coatings. When required, mix coatings to correct consistency in accordance with manufacturer's instructions before application. Do not reduce, thin, or dilute coatings or add materials to coatings unless such procedure is specifically described in manufacturer's product instructions. VOCs need to be confirmed by using the products EDS sheets.

### **B. Primers:**

1. Where the manufacturer offers options on primers for a particular substrate, use primer categorized as "best" by the manufacturer.

## **2.6 ACCESSORIES:**

### **A. Coating Application Accessories:**

1. Provide all primers, sealers, cleaning agents, cleaning cloths, sanding materials, and clean-up materials required, per manufacturer's specifications.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Do not begin application of coatings until substrates have been properly examined and prepared. Notify Architect or Specifier of unsatisfactory conditions before proceeding.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.
- C. Proceed with work only after conditions have been corrected, and approved by all parties, otherwise application of coatings will be considered as an acceptance of surface conditions.

### 3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Proper product selection, surface preparation, and application affect coating performance. Coating integrity and service life will be reduced because of improperly prepared surfaces. Selection and implementation of proper surface preparation ensures coating adhesion to the substrate and prolongs the service life of the coating system.
- B. Selection of the proper method of surface preparation depends on the substrate, the environment, and the expected service life of the coating system. Economics, surface contamination, and the effect on the substrate will also influence the selection of surface preparation methods.
- C. Surface must be clean, dry, and in sound condition. Remove all oil, dust, grease, dirt, loose rust, and other foreign material to ensure adequate adhesion. Recognize that any surface preparation short of total removal of the old coating may compromise the service length of the system.
- D. Prior to attempting to remove mildew, it is always recommended to test any cleaner on a small, inconspicuous area prior to use. Bleach and bleaching type cleaners may damage or discolor existing paint films. Bleach alternative cleaning solutions may be advised. Mildew may be removed before painting by washing with a solution of 1 part liquid household bleach and 3 parts of warm water. Apply the solution and scrub the mildewed area. Allow the solution to remain on the surface for 10 minutes. Rinse thoroughly with clean water and allow the surface to dry at least 48 hours before painting. Wear protective glasses or goggles, waterproof gloves, and protective clothing. Quickly wash off any of the mixture that comes in contact with your skin. Do not add detergents or ammonia to the bleach/water solution.
- E. Poured Concrete:
  - 1. New concrete: For surface preparation, refer to SSPC-SP13/NACE 6/ICRI # 310.2. Surfaces must be clean, dry, sound and offer sufficient profile to achieve adequate adhesion. Minimum substrate cure is 28 days at 75°F. Remove all form release agents, curing compounds, salts, efflorescence, laitance, and other foreign matter by sandblasting, shotblasting, mechanical scarification, or suitable chemical means. Refer to ASTM D4260. Rinse thoroughly to achieve a final pH between 8.0 and 10.0. Allow to dry thoroughly prior to coating.
- F. Fill all cracks, voids, bug holes and joints with appropriate filler or ArmorSeal Crack Filler, ArmorSeal Flexible Joint Sealant, or ArmorSeal Expresspatch.
- G. Always follow the ASTM methods listed below:
  - 1. ASTM F1869 Moisture Test by use of Calcium Chloride
  - 2. ASTM D4258 Standard Practice for Cleaning Concrete
  - 3. ASTM D4259 Standard Practice for Abrading Concrete
  - 4. ASTM D4260 Standard Practice for Etching Concrete
  - 5. ASTM D4263 Plastic Sheet Method for Checking Moisture in Concrete
  - 6. SSPC-SP 13/Nace 6 Surface Preparation of Concrete
  - 7. ICRI # 310.2 Surface Preparation of Concrete

### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. Testing: Due to the wide variety of substrates, preparation methods, application methods and environments, one should test the product in an inconspicuous spot for adhesion and compatibility prior to full-scale application.
- B. Apply all coatings and materials with the manufacturer's specifications in mind. Mix and thin coatings according to manufacturer's recommendation.
- C. Do not apply to wet or damp surfaces.
  - 1. Wait at least 30 days before applying to new concrete or masonry. Or follow manufacturer's procedures to apply appropriate coatings prior to 30 days.
  - 2. Test new concrete for moisture content.
- D. Apply coatings using methods recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Uniformly apply coatings without runs, or sags, without brush marks, and with consistent sheen.
- F. Apply coatings at spreading rate required to achieve the manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
- G. Regardless of number of coats specified, apply as many coats as necessary for complete hide and uniform appearance following manufacturer's guidelines.
- H. Inspection: The coated surface must be inspected and approved by the Architect or Engineer just prior to the application of each coat.

### **3.4 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect finished coatings from damage until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up damaged coatings after substantial completion, following manufacturer's recommendation for touch up or repair of damaged coatings. Repair any defects that will hinder the performance of the coatings.

**END OF SECTION 09 6700**

**SECTION 09 9113**  
**EXTERIOR PAINTING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following exterior substrates:
  - 1. Steel and iron.
  - 2. Galvanized metal.

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
  - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
  - 2. Indicate VOC content.

**1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

## **1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - 1. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product listed in the Exterior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.

### **2.2 PAINT, GENERAL**

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
  - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. Colors: As indicated on Drawings .

### **2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
  - 1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
  - 2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
  - 3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- C. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer .
  - 1. SSPC-SP 2.
  - 2. SSPC-SP 3.
  - 3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4.
  - 4. SSPC-SP 11.
- E. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- F. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.



### **3.3 APPLICATION**

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
  - 3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
  - 4. Paint entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.
  - 5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  - 6. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint undercoats same color as topcoat, but tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
  - 1. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
    - a. Equipment, including panelboards and switch gear.
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - d. Metal conduit.
    - e. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
    - f. .

### **3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### **3.5 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE**

#### **A. Steel and Iron Substrates:**

1. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System MPI EXT 5.1M :
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, rust inhibitive, water based MPI #107.
    - 1) Sherwin Williams: Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer .
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5) , MPI #163.
    - 1) Sherwin Williams: Solo Acrylic Semi-Gloss .

#### **B. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:**

1. Latex System MPI EXT 5.3H:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based , MPI #134.
    - 1) Sherwin Williams: Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer .
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5) , MPI #11.
    - 1) Sherwin Williams: Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss Coating .

**END OF SECTION 09 9113**

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**SECTION 09 9123**  
**INTERIOR PAINTING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following interior substrates:
  - 1. Concrete masonry units (CMUs).
  - 2. Steel and iron.
  - 3. Galvanized metal.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming metal fabrications.

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- G. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
  - 1. Include Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
  - 2. Indicate VOC content.

#### **1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

#### **1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - 1. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product listed in the Interior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.

#### **2.2 PAINT, GENERAL**

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
  - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. Colors: As indicated on Drawings .

#### **2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
  - 1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If

- paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
  3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
  1. Masonry (Clay and CMUs): 12 percent.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

- E. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer .
  - 1. SSPC-SP 2.
  - 2. SSPC-SP 3.
  - 3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4.
  - 4. SSPC-SP 11.
- F. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- G. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- H. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation.

### **3.3 APPLICATION**

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  - 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
  - 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  - 5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
  - 1. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
    - a. Equipment, including panelboards.
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - d. Pipe hangers and supports.

- e. Metal conduit.
  - f. Plastic conduit.
  - g. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
  - h. Other items as directed by Architect.
  - i. .
2. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.

### **3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### **3.5 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE**

- A. CMU Substrates:
  - 1. Latex System MPI INT 4.2A:
    - a. Block Filler: Block filler, latex, interior/exterior , MPI #4.
      - 1) Sherwin Williams: PrepRite .
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 3) , MPI #52.
      - 1) Sherwin Williams: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Eggshell .
- B. Steel Substrates:
  - 1. Latex System, Alkyd Primer MPI INT 5.1QQ:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, anti-corrosive, for metal , MPI #79.
      - 1) Sherwin Williams: Kem Bond HS .
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 3) , MPI #52.
      - 1) Sherwin Williams: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Eggshell .
- C. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:
  - 1. Latex System MPI INT 5.3J:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based , MPI #134.
      - 1) Sherwin Williams: DTM Acrylic Primer/Finish .
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 3) , MPI #52.
      - 1) Sherwin Williams: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Eggshell .



**END OF SECTION 09 9123**

**SECTION 10 4413**  
**FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:
    - a. Portable fire extinguisher.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 10 4416 "Fire Extinguishers" for portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers accommodated by fire-protection cabinets

**1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed-, semirecessed-, or surface-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.

**1.3 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fire-protection cabinets, accessories, and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

**2.2 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET**

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Babcock-Davis.
  - b. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
  - c. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
  - d. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
- B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated .
- C. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet .
- D. Surface-Mounted Cabinet: Cabinet box fully exposed and mounted directly on wall with no trim.
- E. Cabinet Trim Material: Steel sheet .
- F. Door Material: Steel sheet .
- G. Door Style: Fully glazed panel with frame .
- H. Door Glazing: Tempered float glass (clear) Tempered break glass .
- I. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
  1. Provide manufacturer's standard.
  2. Provide continuous hinge, of same material and finish as trim, , permitting door to open 180 degrees.
- J. Materials:
  1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
    - a. Finish: Baked enamel, TGIC polyester powder coat, HAA polyester powder coat, epoxy powder coat, or polyester/epoxy hybrid powder coat, complying with AAMA 2603.
    - b. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range .
  2. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 3 mm thick, .
  3. Tempered Break Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 1.5 mm thick.

## **2.3 SECURITY FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET**

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher .
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Babcock-Davis.
    - b. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
    - c. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.

- d.     Larsens Manufacturing Company.
- B.    Cabinet Construction: Nonrated .
  - 1.     Fire-Rated Cabinets: Construct fire-rated cabinets with double walls lined with minimum 5/8-inch- thick fire-barrier material.
- C.    Cabinet Material: 0.068-inch- thick steel sheet .
  - 1.     Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.
- D.    Surface-Mounted Cabinet: Cabinet box fully exposed and mounted directly on wall with no trim.
- E.    Cabinet Trim Material: Steel sheet .
- F.    Door Material: 0.097-inch- thick steel sheet.
- G.    Door Style: Solid opaque panel with frame.
- H.    Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated, and as follows:
  - 1.     Recessed door pull.
  - 2.     Continuous Hinge: Same material and finish as trim, permitting door to open 180 degrees.
  - 3.     Mechanical Deadlock: Lockbolt retracted and extended by five-tumbler paracentric cylinder; keyed one side.
    - a.     Lockbolt: 1-1/2 inches high by 3/4 inch thick; 5/8-inch throw.
- I.    Accessories:
  - 1.     Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to security fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
  - 2.     Keys: Three per door lock.
- J.    Materials:
  - 1.     Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
    - a.     Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat.
    - b.     Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors .

## **2.4     FABRICATION**

- A.    Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
  - 1.     Weld joints and grind smooth.
  - 2.     Miter corners and grind smooth.
  - 3.     Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
  - 4.     Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
  - 5.     Install door locks at factory.

- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.
  - 1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.
  - 2. Fabricate door frames of one-piece construction with edges flanged.
  - 3. Miter and weld perimeter door frames and grind smooth.
- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

## **2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where semirecessed cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Prepare recesses for semirecessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at height indicated below:
  - 1. Fire-Protection Cabinets: 42 inches above finished floor to top of fire extinguisher.
- B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.

1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire-protection cabinets. If wall thickness is inadequate for recessed cabinets, provide semirecessed fire-protection cabinets.
2. Provide inside latch and lock for break-glass panels.
3. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.

C. Identification:

1. Apply decals at locations indicated.
2. Apply decals on field-painted fire-protection cabinets after painting is complete.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

### **END OF SECTION 10 4413**

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**SECTION 10 4416**  
**FIRE EXTINGUISHERS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 10 4413 "Fire Protection Cabinets."

**1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher.

**1.3 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FM Global.

**2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS**

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Amerex Corporation.
    - b. Babcock-Davis.
    - c. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
    - d. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.



- e. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
- B. Dry-Powder Type : FM approved, UL-rated Class D, 30-lb nominal capacity, with sodium chloride -based powder in enameled-steel container; with pressure-indicating gage.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
  - 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install fire extinguishers in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

**END OF SECTION 10 4416**

**SECTION 23 0593  
TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
    - a. Constant-volume air systems.
  - 2. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:
    - a. RTU systems.
  - 3. Reporting results of activities and procedures specified in this Section.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. BAS: Building automation systems.
- C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Certified TAB reports.
- B. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
  - 1. Instrument type and make.
  - 2. Serial number.
  - 3. Application.
  - 4. Dates of use.
  - 5. Dates of calibration.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC or NEBB.

- B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)**

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as flow-control devices and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine equipment performance data including fan curves.
  - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
- E. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- F. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- G. Examine terminal units and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- H. Examine damper control valves for proper installation for their intended function of opening and closing air flows.
- I. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- J. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
  - 1. Airside:
    - a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

- b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
- c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
- d. Clean filters are installed.
- e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
- f. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
- g. Ceilings are installed.
- h. Windows and doors are installed.
- i. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

### 3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation and ducts for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
  - 2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

### 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- C. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- D. Check for airflow blockages.
- E. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- F. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- G. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

### 3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure total airflow.

- a. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
    - b. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
    - c. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
  2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
    - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - b. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
    - c. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
  3. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
  2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
  3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
  2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
  3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
  4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.
1. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  2. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
  3. Mark all final settings.
  4. Measure and record all operating data.
  5. Record final fan-performance data.
- ### 3.6 TOLERANCES
- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.
- ### 3.7 FINAL REPORT
- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
  3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
1. Fan curves.
  2. Manufacturers' test data.
  3. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
1. Title page.
  2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
  3. Project name.
  4. Project location.
  5. Architect's name and address.
  6. Engineer's name and address.
  7. Contractor's name and address.
  8. Report date.
  9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
  10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  11. Summary of contents including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  13. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
  14. Test conditions for fan performance forms including the following:
    - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - e. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
1. Fan Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Arrangement and class.
    - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
  2. Motor Data:

- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
- b. Horsepower and rpm.
- c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
- g. Number, make, and size of belts.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
- c. Fan rpm.
- d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

E. Round and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports:

1. Report Data:

- a. System and air-handling-unit number.
- b. Location and zone.
- c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
- d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Duct size in inches.
- f. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
- g. Indicated velocity in fpm.
- h. Actual airflow rate in cfm.

F. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System and air-handling unit identification.
- b. Location and zone.
- c. Apparatus used for test.
- d. Area served.
- e. Make.
- f. Number from system diagram.
- g. Type and model number.
- h. Size.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Air velocity in fpm.
- c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
- d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
- e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
- f. Final velocity in fpm.
- g. Space temperature in deg F.

G. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

- a. Instrument type and make.
- b. Serial number.
- c. Application.
- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

### 3.8 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. Architect shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- B. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- C. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- D. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:
  - 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.9 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 30 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

**END OF SECTION 23 0593**



**SECTION 23 0700  
HVAC INSULATION**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Insulation Materials:
    - a. Flexible elastomeric.
    - b. Mineral fiber.
  - 2. Adhesives.
  - 3. Mastics.
  - 4. Sealants.
  - 5. Tapes.
  - 6. Securements.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any).

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

**1.5 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application, duct Installer for duct insulation application, and equipment Installer for equipment insulation application. Before preparing piping and ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain

clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS**

- A. Comply with requirements in Part 3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

### **2.2 ADHESIVES**

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

### **2.3 MASTICS**

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.

- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 59 percent by volume and 71 percent by weight.
  4. Color: White.

## 2.4 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Width: 3 inches.
  2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
  3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  4. Elongation: 2 percent.
  5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Width: 3 inches.
  2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
  3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  4. Elongation: 2 percent.
  5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive. Suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Width: 2 inches.
  2. Thickness: 6 mils.
  3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
  4. Elongation: 500 percent.
  5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.5 SECUREMENTS

- A. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch or 0.135-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch or 0.135-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.

3. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
4. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
  3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

#### **3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment, ducts and fittings, and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment, duct system, and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct and pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

C. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions. Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.

### 3.5 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.6 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

- a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
- b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
- c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
- d. Do not over compress insulation during installation.
- e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
- f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
5. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.

3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
  - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
  - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
  - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
  - d. Do not over compress insulation during installation.
  - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
5. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

### 3.7 INDOOR DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Concealed, round and flat-oval, duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density or 2-1/8" inches thick with 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density with a R-value of 6.0.
- B. Concealed, rectangular, duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density or 2-1/8" inches thick with 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density with a R-value of 6.0.
- C. Exposed, rectangular, duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inches thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
  2. 1" thick glass fiber duct liner, mechanically fastened. (Acceptable for RTU-2 and RTU-6 only) Duct liner shall meet the requirements of ASTM C1071 and NFPA 259. Liner shall be resistant to microbial growth using a "no growth criteria" when tested in accordance with ASTM C1138, G21 and G22. All dimensions shown on drawings are inside dimensions.

**END OF SECTION 23 0700**

**This page intentionally left blank.**



**SECTION 23 3113  
METAL DUCTS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
- 2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
- 3. Sheet metal materials.
- 4. Sealants and gaskets.
- 5. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
- 2. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

**1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

1. Static-Pressure Classes:

- a. Supply Ducts (except in Mechanical Rooms): 1-inch wg.
- b. Return Ducts (Negative Pressure): 1-inch wg.
- c. Exhaust Ducts (Negative Pressure): 1-inch wg.

2. Leakage Class:

- a. Round Supply-Air Duct: 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg.
- b. Rectangular Supply-Air Duct: 6 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg .

- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible".

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 – “Systems and Equipment” and Section 7 – “Construction and System Start-up.”
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 – “HVAC System Construction and Insulation.”

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Approved manufacturers:
  - 1. United McGill
  - 2. Lapine Metal Products
  - 3. United Sheet Metal
- B. Substitutions: See Section 00 2600.

#### 2.2 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Transverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Transverse joints in ducts larger than 18": Flanged.
  - 2. TDC duct and fitting construction is allowed, but must still comply with this section of the specification.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-5, "Longitudinal Seams - Rectangular Ducts," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 2, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

#### 2.3 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Transverse Joints - Round Duct," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than **18** Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
  - 2. TDC duct and fitting construction is allowed, but must still comply with this section of the specification.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Seams - Round Duct and Fittings," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
  - 2. Snap lock is NOT acceptable.
- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.4 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
- C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.

## 2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
  - 1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
  - 2. Tape Width: 4 inches.
  - 3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.

4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.

## 2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- C. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- D. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- E. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- F. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
  1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION**

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials.

### **3.2 SEAM AND JOINT SEALING**

- A. Seal duct seams and joints for duct static-pressure and leakage classes specified in "Performance Requirements" Article, according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 1-2, "Standard Duct Sealing Requirements," unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.3 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
  - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
  - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
  - 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.4 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

### 3.5 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel:
- B. Elbow Configuration:
  - 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
    - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Adjustable elbows will be accepted but only in areas where construction limits the radius identified in 1). This also applies to 3.6 B.2.b. The

engineer will field verify such conditions where adjustable elbows will be allowed.

- b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
    - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
    - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
    - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
  - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:
    - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
    - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
    - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-3, "Round Duct Elbows."
- a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
    - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
  - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
  - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam or spiral.
- C. Branch Configuration:
- 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-6, "Branch Connections."
    - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
    - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: High efficiency takeoff with gasket.
  - 2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals."
    - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
    - b. Velocity 1000 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

**END OF SECTION 23 3113**

**This page intentionally left blank.**



**SECTION 23 3300  
AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Manual volume dampers.
- 2. Control dampers.
- 3. Flange connectors.
- 4. Turning vanes.
- 5. Flexible connectors.
- 6. Flexible ducts.

B. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 28 Section "Fire Detection and Alarm" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts.
- D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.2 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - d. METALAIR, Inc.
  - e. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - f. Ruskin Company.
  - g. Vent Products Company, Inc.
- B. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
  - 1. Standard leakage rating.
  - 2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  - 3. Frames:
    - a. Hat-shaped, galvanized steel channels, 0.064-inch minimum thickness.
    - b. Mitered and welded corners.
    - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  - 4. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
  - 5. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
  - 6. Bearings:
    - a. Synthetic.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  - 7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- C. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

## 2.3 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  3. Nailor Industries Inc.
  4. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
  5. Ruskin Company.
  6. Vent Products Company, Inc.
- B. Low-leakage rating and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
- C. Frames:
1. Hat shaped.
  2. Galvanized-steel channels, 0.064 inch thick.
  3. Mitered and welded corners.
- D. Blades:
1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 8 inches.
  2. Opposed-blade design.
  3. Galvanized steel.
  4. 0.064 inch thick.
  5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene edging.
  6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.
- E. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch-diameter; galvanized steel blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.
1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- F. Bearings:
1. Synthetic.
  2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

## 2.4 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Nexus PDQ; Division of Shilco Holdings Inc.
3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
4. TDC duct and fitting construction is allowed, but must still comply with this section of the specification and Section 23 3113.

- B. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- C. Material: Galvanized steel.
- D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

## 2.5 TURNING VANES

- A. Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- D. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

## 2.6 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- B. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- C. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to 2 strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- D. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd.
  2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
  3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

## 2.7 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg positive and 0.5-inch wg negative.
  - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F.
- B. Flexible Duct Connectors:
  - 1. Clamps: Nylon strap in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
- D. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- F. Connect diffusers to low-pressure ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- G. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

## END OF SECTION 23 3300

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**SECTION 23 3713  
DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes ceiling- and wall-mounted diffusers, registers, and grilles.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each product indicated, include the following:
  - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  - 2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate Drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 GRILLES AND REGISTERS**

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.
  - 2. Price Industries.
  - 3. Titus.
  - 4. Krueger.
  - 5. Anemostat Products.

**2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practicable. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

#### **3.3 ADJUSTING**

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

### **END OF SECTION 23 3713**



## **Part 1 — Packaged Rooftop Units**

### **1.01 Decentralized Unitary HVAC Equipment Schedule**

- A. Rooftop unit (RTU) schedule
  - 1. Schedule is per the project specification requirements.

## **Part 2 — HVAC equipment insulation**

### **2.01 Decentralized, Rooftop Units:**

- A. Evaporator fan compartment:
  - 1. Interior cabinet surfaces shall be insulated with a minimum  $\frac{1}{2}$ -in. thick, minimum  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -lb density, flexible fiberglass insulation bonded with a phenolic binder, neoprene coated on the air side.
  - 2. Insulation and adhesive shall meet NFPA 90A requirements for flame spread and smoke generation.
  - 3. Unit internal insulation linings shall be resistant to mold growth in accordance with “mold growth and humidity” test in ASTM C1338, G21, and UL 181 or comparable test method. Air stream surfaces shall be evaluated in accordance with the “Erosion Test” in UL 181, as part of ASTM C1071.

## **Part 3 — Instrumentation and control devices for HVAC**

### **3.01 Sensors and Transmitters:**

- A. Thermostats:
  - 1. Thermostat must:
    - a. have capability to energize 2 different stages of cooling, and 2 different stages of heating.
    - b. include capability for occupancy scheduling.

## **Part 5 — Electric and electronic control system for HVAC**

### **5.01 Decentralized, rooftop units:**

- A. General:
  - 1. Shall be complete with self-contained low-voltage control circuit protected by a resettable circuit breaker on the 24-v transformer side. Transformer shall have 75VA capability.
  - 2. Shall utilize color-coded wiring.
  - 3. Shall include a central control terminal board to conveniently and safely provide connection points for vital control functions such as: smoke detectors, phase monitor, economizer, thermostat, DDC control options, loss of charge, freeze switch, high pressure switches.
  - 4. Unit shall include a minimum of one 8-pin screw terminal connection board for connection of control wiring.
  - 5. Shall include integrated defrost system to prevent excessive frost accumulation during heating duty, and shall be controlled as follows:
    - a. Defrost shall be initiated on the basis of time and coil temperature.
    - b. A 30, 60, 90, 120 minute timer shall activate the defrost cycle only if the coil temperature is low enough to indicate a heavy frost condition.
    - c. Defrost cycle shall terminate when defrost thermostat is satisfied and shall have a positive termination time of 10 minutes.
  - 6. Defrost system shall also include:
    - a. Defrost Cycle Indicator LED.
    - b. Dip switch selectable defrost time between 30, 60, 90 and 120 minutes. Factory set at 30 minutes.
    - c. Molded plug connection to ensure proper connection.
- B. Safeties:
  - 1. Compressor over-temperature, over-current.
  - 2. Low-pressure switch:
    - a. Units with 2 compressors shall have different sized connectors for the circuit 1 and circuit 2 loss of charge switches. They shall physically prevent the cross-wiring of the safety switches between circuits 1 and 2.
    - b. Loss of charge switch shall use different color wire than the high pressure switch. The purpose is to assist the installer and service technician to correctly wire and/or troubleshoot the rooftop unit.

3. High-pressure switch:
  - a. Units with 2 compressors shall have different sized connectors for the circuit 1 and circuit 2 high-pressure switches. They shall physically prevent the cross-wiring of the safety switches between circuits 1 and 2.
  - b. High-pressure switch shall use different color wire than the low-pressure switch. The purpose is to assist the installer and service technician to correctly wire and/or troubleshoot the rooftop unit.
4. Freeze protection thermostat, evaporator coil.
5. Automatic reset, motor thermal overload protector.

#### **Part 6 — Sequence of operations for HVAC controls**

##### **6.01 Decentralized, Rooftop Units:**

- A. Heat pump shall operate on a call for heating or cooling.
- A. Electric Heat coil shall automatically operate if required for additional heating.

#### **Part 7 — Panel air filters**

##### **7.01 Decentralized rooftop units:**

- A. Standard filter section:
  1. Shall consist of factory-installed, low velocity, throwaway 2-in. thick fiberglass filters of commercially available sizes.
  2. Unit shall use only one filter size. Multiple sizes are not acceptable.
  3. Filters shall be accessible through an access panel with “no-tool” removal as described in the unit cabinet section of this specification.

#### **Part 8 — Self-contained air conditioners**

##### **8.01 Small-Capacity Self-Contained Air Conditioners:**

- A. General:
  1. Outdoor, rooftop mounted, electrically controlled, heating and cooling unit utilizing hermetic scroll compressor(s) for cooling duty and heat pump for heating duty.
  2. Factory assembled, single piece heating and cooling rooftop unit. Contained within the unit enclosure shall be all factory wiring, piping, controls, and special features required prior to field start-up.
  3. Unit shall use R-410A refrigerant.
  4. Unit shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
  5. Unit must be selected and installed in compliance with local, state, and federal codes.
- B. Quality Assurance:
  1. Unit meets ASHRAE 90.1-2016 and IECC-2015 minimum efficiency requirements.
  3. Unit shall be rated in accordance with AHRI Standards 210/240 and 340/360.
  4. Unit shall be designed to conform to ASHRAE 15.
  5. Unit shall be UL-tested and certified in accordance with ANSI Z21.47 Standards and UL or ETL-listed and certified under Canadian standards as a total package for safety requirements.
  6. Insulation and adhesive shall meet NFPA 90A requirements for flame spread and smoke generation.
  7. Unit internal insulation linings shall be resistant to mold growth in accordance with “mold growth and humidity” test in ASTM C1338, G21, and UL 181 or comparable test method. Air stream surfaces shall be evaluated in accordance with the “Erosion Test” in UL 181, as part of ASTM C1071.
  8. Unit casing shall be capable of withstanding 500-hour salt spray exposure per ASTM B117 (scribed specimen).
  9. Roof curb shall be designed to conform to NRCA Standards.
  10. Unit shall be subjected to a completely automated run test on the assembly line. The data for each unit will be stored at the factory, and must be available upon request.
  11. Unit shall be designed in accordance with UL Standard 1995, including tested to withstand rain.
  12. Unit shall be constructed to prevent intrusion of snow and tested to prevent snow intrusion into the control box up to 40 mph.
  13. Unit shake tested to assurance level 1, ASTM D4169 to ensure shipping reliability.

14. High Efficiency Motors listed shall meet section 313 of the Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007 (EISA 2007).
- C. Delivery, storage, and handling:
1. Unit shall be stored and handled per manufacturer's recommendations.
  2. Lifting by crane requires either shipping top panel or spreader bars.
  3. Unit shall only be stored or positioned in the upright position.
- D. Project conditions:
- As specified in the contract.
- E. Operating characteristics:
1. Unit shall be capable of starting and running at 125°F (52°C) ambient outdoor temperature, meeting maximum load criteria of AHRI Standard 210/240 or 340/360 at ± 10% voltage.
  2. Compressor with standard controls shall be capable of operation down to 30°F (−1°C), ambient outdoor temperatures. Accessory Low Ambient controls are available if mechanically cooling at ambient temperatures below 30°F (−1°C).
  3. Unit shall be capable of simultaneous heating duty and defrost cycle operation when using accessory electric heaters.
  4. Unit shall discharge supply air vertically or horizontally as shown on contract drawings.
  5. Unit shall be factory configured for vertical supply and return configurations.
  6. Unit shall be field convertible from vertical to horizontal configuration. No special kits on 04 to 09 sizes. Size 12 model shall require a supply duct kit for field installation.
  7. Unit shall be capable of mixed operation: vertical supply with horizontal return or horizontal supply with vertical return.
- F. Electrical Requirements:
1. Main power supply voltage, phase, and frequency must match those required by the manufacturer.
  2. Control Panel SCCR (short circuit current rating): 5kA RMS at Rated Symmetrical Voltage.
- G. Unit cabinet:
1. Unit cabinet shall be constructed of galvanized steel, and shall be bonderized and coated with a pre-painted baked enamel finish on all externally exposed surfaces.
  2. Unit cabinet exterior paint shall be: film thickness, (dry) 0.003 inches minimum, gloss (per ASTM D523, 60°F): 60, Hardness: H-2H Pencil hardness.
  3. Evaporator fan compartment interior cabinet insulation shall conform to AHRI Standards 210/240 or 340/360 minimum exterior sweat criteria. Interior surfaces shall be insulated with a minimum  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. thick, 1 lb density, flexible fiberglass insulation, neoprene coated on the air side. Aluminum foil-faced fiberglass insulation shall be used in the heat compartment.
  4. Unit internal insulation linings shall be resistant to mold growth in accordance with "mold growth and humidity" test in ASTM C1338, G21, and UL 181 or comparable test method. Air stream surfaces shall be evaluated in accordance with the "Erosion Test" in UL 181, as part of ASTM C1071.
  5. Base of unit shall have a minimum of three locations for thru-the-base electrical connections (factory-installed or field-installed), standard.
  6. Base rail:
    - a. Unit shall have base rails on a minimum of 2 sides.
    - b. Holes shall be provided in the base rails for rigging shackles to facilitate maneuvering and overhead rigging.
    - c. Holes shall be provided in the base rail for moving the rooftop by fork truck.
    - d. Base rail shall be a minimum of 16-gauge thickness.
  7. Condensate pan and connections:
    - a. Shall be a sloped condensate drain pan made of a non-corrosive material.
    - b. Shall comply with ASHRAE Standard 62.
    - c. Shall use a  $\frac{3}{4}$ -in. -14 NPT drain connection, possible either through the bottom or end of the drain pan. Connection shall be made per manufacturer's recommendations.

8. Top panel:
  - a. Shall be a single piece on all 04 to 09 models. Two piece on size 12 models.
9. Electrical connections:
  - a. All unit power wiring shall enter unit cabinet at a single, factory prepared, knockout location.
  - b. Thru-the-base capability.
    - 1.) Standard unit shall have a thru-the-base electrical location(s) using a raised, embossed portion of the unit basepan.
    - 2.) Optional, factory approved, watertight connection method must be used for thru-the-base electrical connections.
    - 3.) No basepan penetration, other than those authorized by the manufacturer, is permitted.
10. Component access panels (standard):
  - a. Cabinet panels shall be easily removable for servicing.
  - b. Unit shall have one factory-installed, tool-less, removable, filter access panel.
  - c. Panels covering control box, indoor fan, indoor fan motor, and compressors shall have molded composite handles.
  - d. Handles shall be UV modified, composite, permanently attached, and recessed into the panel.
  - e. Screws on the vertical portion of all removable access panels shall engage into heat resistant, molded composite collars.
  - f. Collars shall be removable and easily replaceable using manufacturer recommended parts.

H. Coils:

1. Standard Aluminum/Copper Coils on all models:
  - a. Standard evaporator and condenser coils shall have aluminum lanced plate fins mechanically bonded to seamless internally grooved copper tubes with all joints brazed.
  - b. Evaporator coils shall be leak tested to 150 psig. Pressure tested to 450 psig and qualified to UL 1995 burst test at 1775 psig.
  - c. Condenser coils shall be leak tested to 150 psig. Pressure tested to 650 psig and qualified to UL 1995 burst test at 1980 psig.

I. Refrigerant components:

1. Refrigerant circuit shall include the following control, safety, and maintenance features:
  - a. Thermostatic Expansion Valve (TXV) shall help provide optimum performance across the entire operating range. Shall contain removable power element to allow change out of power element and bulb without removing the valve body.
  - b. Refrigerant filter drier on each refrigerant circuit.
  - c. Service gauge connections on suction and discharge lines.
  - d. Pressure gauge access through a specially designed access port in the top panel of the unit.
  - e. Suction line accumulator to provide protection in all operating modes from cooling, heating and reverse cycle switching. Standard on each refrigerant circuit.
2. There shall be gauge line access port in the top of the rooftop, covered by a black, removable plug.
  - a. The plug shall be easy to remove and replace.
  - b. When the plug is removed, the gauge access port shall enable maintenance personnel to route their pressure gauge lines.
  - c. This gauge access port shall facilitate correct and accurate condenser pressure readings by enabling the reading with the compressor access panel on.
  - d. The plug shall be made of a leak proof, UV-resistant, composite material.
3. Compressors:
  - a. Unit shall use one fully hermetic, scroll compressor for each independent refrigeration circuit.
  - b. Models shall be available with single compressor/single stage cooling designs on 04 to 07 models, single compressor/2-stage cooling on 07 size, and 2 compressor/2-stage cooling models on 08 to 12 sizes.
  - c. Compressor motors shall be cooled by refrigerant gas passing through motor windings.

- d. Compressors shall be internally protected from high discharge temperature conditions.
  - e. Compressors shall be protected from an overtemperature and over-amperage conditions by an internal, motor overload device.
  - f. Compressor shall be factory mounted on rubber grommets.
  - g. Compressor motors shall have internal line break thermal, current overload and high pressure differential protection.
  - h. Crankcase heaters shall be utilized on all models to protect compressor with specific refrigerant charge.
- J. Filter section
- 1. Filters access is specified in the unit cabinet section of this specification.
  - 2. Filters shall be held in place by a pivoting filter tray, facilitating easy removal and installation.
  - 3. Shall consist of factory-installed, low velocity, throw-away 2-in. thick fiberglass filters.
  - 4. Filters shall be standard, commercially available sizes.
  - 5. Only one size filter per unit is allowed.
- K. Evaporator fan and motor:
- 1. Evaporator fan motor:
    - a. Shall have permanently lubricated bearings.
    - b. Shall have inherent automatic-reset thermal overload protection or circuit breaker.
    - c. Shall have a maximum continuous bhp rating for continuous duty operation; no safety factors above that rating shall be required.
  - 2. Electric Drive (Direct Drive) X13 – 5 Speed/Torque Evaporator Fan:
    - a. Multi-speed motor with easy quick adjustment settings.
    - b. Blower fan shall be double- inlet type with forward-curved blades.
    - c. Shall be constructed from steel with a corrosion resistant finish and dynamically balanced.
    - d. Standard on all 04-06 models.
  - 3. Belt-driven evaporator fan:
    - a. Belt drive shall include an adjustable pitch motor pulley.
    - b. Shall use sealed, permanently lubricated ball-bearing type.
    - c. Blower fan shall be double inlet type with forward curved blades.
    - d. Shall be constructed from steel with a corrosion resistant finish and dynamically balanced.
    - e. Standard on all 07-12 size models. Optional on all 04-06 3-phase models.
- L. Condenser Fans and Motors:
- 1. Condenser fan motors:
    - a. Shall be a totally enclosed motor.
    - b. Shall use permanently lubricated bearings.
    - c. Shall have inherent thermal overload protection with an automatic reset feature.
    - d. Shall use a shaft down design on all sizes.
  - 2. Condenser fans:
    - a. Shall be a direct driven propeller type fan.
    - b. Shall have aluminum blades riveted to corrosion resistant steel spiders and shall be dynamically balanced.
- M. Special features, options, and accessories:
- 1. Integrated economizer:
    - a. Integrated, gear driven opposing modulating blade design type capable of simultaneous economizer and compressor operation.
    - b. Independent modules for vertical or horizontal return configuration shall be available. Vertical return modules shall be available as a factory-installed option.
    - c. Damper blades shall be galvanized steel with composite gears. Plastic or composite blades on intake or return shall not be acceptable.

- d. Shall include all hardware and controls to provide free cooling with outdoor air when temperature and/or humidity are below setpoints.
  - e. Shall be equipped with gear driven dampers for both the outdoor ventilation air and the return air for positive air stream control.
  - f. Low leak rate models shall be equipped with dampers not to exceed 2% leakage at 1 in. wg pressure differential.
  - k. Shall be capable of introducing up to 100% outdoor air.
  - l. Shall be equipped with a barometric relief damper capable of relieving up to 100% return air and contain seals that meet ASHRAE 90.1-2016 and IECC-2015 requirements.
  - m. Shall be designed to close damper(s) during loss-of-power situations with spring return built into motor.
  - o. Enthalpy sensor shall be provided as standard. Outdoor air sensor setpoint shall be adjustable and shall range from 40 to 100°F (4 to 38°C).
  - o. The economizer controller shall also provide control of an accessory power exhaust unit function. Factory set at 100%, with a range of 0% to 100%.
  - p. The economizer shall maintain minimum airflow into the building during occupied period and provide design ventilation rate for full occupancy.
  - q. Dampers shall be completely closed when the unit is in the unoccupied mode.
  - r. Economizer controller shall accept a 2 to 10 Vdc CO<sub>2</sub> sensor input for IAQ/DCV control. In this mode, dampers shall modulate the outdoor air damper to provide ventilation based on the sensor input.
  - s. Compressor lockout temperature on W7220 is adjustable from -45°F to 80°F, set at a factory default of 32°F. Others shall open at 35°F (2°C) and close at 50°F (10°C).
  - t. Actuator shall be direct coupled to economizer gear. No linkage arms or control rods shall be acceptable.
  - u. Economizer controller shall provide indications when in free cooling mode, in the DCV mode, or the exhaust fan contact is closed.
8. Unit-mounted disconnect switch:
- a. Switch shall be factory-installed, internally mounted.
  - b. National Electric Code (NEC) and UL approved non-fused switch shall provide unit power shutoff.
  - c. Shall be accessible from outside the unit.
  - d. Shall provide local shutdown and lockout capability.
  - e. Sized only for the unit as ordered from the factory. Does not accommodate field-installed devices.
9. Convenience outlet:
- a. Powered convenience outlet. (Not available on single phase models):
    - 1.) Outlet shall be powered from main line power to the rooftop unit.
    - 2.) Outlet shall be powered from line side or load side of disconnect by installing contractor, as required by code. If outlet is powered from load side of disconnect, unit electrical ratings shall be UL certified and rated for additional outlet amperage.
    - 3.) Outlet shall be factory-installed and internally mounted with easily accessible 115-v female receptacle.
    - 4.) Outlet shall include 15 amp GFI receptacles with independent fuse protection.
    - 5.) Voltage required to operate convenience outlet shall be provided by a factory-installed step down transformer.
    - 6.) Outlet shall be accessible from outside the unit.
    - 7.) Outlet shall include a field-installed "Wet in Use" cover.
10. Thru- the-base connectors:
- a. Kits shall provide connectors to permit electrical connections to be brought to the unit through the unit basepan.
  - b. Minimum of three connection locations per unit.
12. Roof curbs (vertical):
- a. Full perimeter roof curb with exhaust capability providing separate air streams for energy recovery from the exhaust air without supply air contamination.

- b. Formed galvanized steel with wood nailer strip and shall be capable of supporting entire unit weight.
  - c. Permits installation and securing of ductwork to curb prior to mounting unit on the curb.
- 13. Medium Static Indoor Fan Motor and Drive:
  - a. Medium static motor and drive shall be factory-installed to provide additional performance range.
- 14. Outdoor air enthalpy sensor:
  - a. The outdoor air enthalpy sensor shall be used to provide single enthalpy control. When used in conjunction with a return air enthalpy sensor, the unit will provide differential enthalpy control. The sensor allows the unit to determine if outside air is suitable for free cooling.
- 15. Return air enthalpy sensor:
  - a. The return air enthalpy sensor shall be used in conjunction with an outdoor air enthalpy sensor to provide differential enthalpy control.
- 16. Indoor air quality (CO<sub>2</sub>) sensor:
  - a. Shall be able to provide demand ventilation indoor air quality (IAQ) control.
  - b. The IAQ sensor shall be available in duct mount, wall mount, or wall mount with LED display. The setpoint shall have adjustment capability.
- 17. Smoke detectors (factory-installed only):
  - a. Shall be a four-wire controller and detector.
  - b. Shall be environmental compensated with differential sensing for reliable, stable, and drift-free sensitivity.
  - c. Shall use magnet-activated test/reset sensor switches.
  - d. Shall have tool-less connection terminal access.
  - e. Shall have a recessed momentary switch for testing and resetting the detector.
  - f. Controller shall include:
    - 1.) One set of normally open alarm initiation contacts for connection to an initiating device circuit on a fire alarm control panel.
    - 2.) Two Form-C auxiliary alarm relays for interface with rooftop unit or other equipment.
    - 3.) One Form-C supervision (trouble) relay to control the operation of the Trouble LED on a remote test/reset station.
    - 4.) Capable of direct connection to two individual detector modules.
    - 5.) Can be wired to up to 14 other duct smoke detectors for multiple fan shutdown applications.
- 21. Electric Heat:
  - a. Heating Section
    - 1.) Heater element open coil resistance wire, nickel-chrome alloy, 0.29 inches inside diameter, strung through ceramic insulators mounted on metal frame. Coil ends are staked and welded to terminal screw slots.
    - 2.) Heater assemblies are provided with integral fusing in the single point box (if applicable) for protection of internal heater circuits not exceeding 48 amps each. Electric heaters other than CRHEATER113B00-116B00 use 24v control side break/auto-reset or line-break/auto-reset limit switches to protect the unit against over-temperature situations. CRHEATER113B00-116B00 electric heater applications use a combination of 24v control side break/auto-reset, line-break/non-resettable "one shot" limit switches to protect the unit against over-temperature situations. All heaters use magnetic heater contactors (24 v coil) and terminal block all mounted in electric heater control box (minimum 18 ga galvanized steel) attached to end of heater assembly.
- 22. Hinged Access panels:
  - a. Shall provide easy access through integrated quarter turn latches.
  - b. Shall be on major panels of filter, control box, fan motor and compressor.

**This page intentionally left blank.**



**SECTION 26 0500  
ELECTRICAL GENERAL PROVISIONS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract, including general and supplementary conditions and Division 01 specification sections, apply to all Division 26 specification sections.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Work under this section consists of electrical equipment coordination and common electrical installation requirements as indicated on the accompanying drawings and specified hereafter, or as directed by Owner or Owner's representative.
- B. The following general provisions are intended to supplement these sections of the specifications. In cases of conflicting requirements, the stipulations set forth in Division 01 specification sections supersede and must be satisfied by the contractor.

**1.3 SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS, NOT CONTAINED HEREIN**

- A. The contractor for this work is referred to the drawings, bidding requirements, general conditions, special conditions, temporary services, and other pertinent sections of these specifications for any special instructions that may affect his bid or his work on this project.

**1.4 APPLICABLE CODES AND ORDINANCES**

- A. All work on this project shall conform with all applicable Federal, State and Local Laws, Codes and Ordinances including, but not limited to the latest approved additions of the following:
  - 1. National Electrical Code (NFPA 70).
  - 2. Life Safety Code (NFPA 101).
  - 3. State Building Codes.
  - 4. Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA).
  - 5. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).
- B. Cited references, or specified portions thereof, current at the date of bidding documents, unless otherwise specified, govern the work. In conflict between cited standards and project specifications, do not proceed with any work until Architect issues written clarification.

**1.5 LICENSES, PERMITS, AND INSPECTIONS**

- A. The contractor shall secure all licenses and permits required for work on this project and shall arrange for all inspections required by all codes and/or ordinances. All such fees or charges for licenses, permits, and inspections shall be paid for by the contractor and shall be included in his bid.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit shop drawings for materials, equipment and products as specified in the following specification sections.
- B. Contractor must furnish the brand of material and equipment listed in the specifications or their approved equals. Where more than one name is listed, contractor may select any one of the various brands specified.
- C. Contractor may use in his bid any other approved equal or similar brand of material and equipment not named or specified in these specifications. In order to be considered, the contractor must request approval to bid the substitution in writing no later than ten (10) days prior to the bid date. If permitted, the substitutions will be approved by addendum.
- D. Products and manufacturers not specifically named or specified in these specifications or approved by addendum, will not be considered for use on this project.

1.7 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record all deviations from the construction documents on a set of prints, and deliver to Architect upon completion of project. Special attention must be given to record the locations of concealed and buried items to facilitate future location.

1.8 TEMPORARY CONSTRUCTION LIGHT AND POWER

- A. See Section 01 5000, "Temporary Facilities and Controls" section of this specification.

1.9 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Basic materials include, but not limited to the following:
  - 1. Conductors and cables.
  - 2. Hangers and supports.
  - 3. Conduit, raceways, and fittings.
  - 4. Boxes.
  - 5. Lighting control devices.
  - 6. Wiring devices.
  - 7. Lighting fixtures.
  - 8. Fire alarm devices.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Materials shall be suitably packaged by manufacturer to prevent damage during shipment. Damaged materials will not be acceptable for use.
- B. Store materials on site in clean, dry storage area; when outside, elevated above grade and enclosed with durable watertight wrapping.
- C. Handle all materials carefully to prevent damage. Minor scratches, marks, or blemishes to finish shall be repaired to satisfaction of Architect.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Contractor to furnish and install only those brands of equipment listed in these specifications or accepted by addenda as substitutes.

### **2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. Provide all new materials of a quality not less than what is specified, without blemish or defect, in accord with standards specified and labeled by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL).

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 COORDINATION**

- A. Contractor is responsible for reading all specification sections covering work performed by other trades that may affect his work on this project.
- B. Coordinate work with other contractors regarding location and size of pipes, raceways, ducts, openings, switches, and outlets. Where required and possible, make minor adjustments to locations and mounting heights of equipment or apparatus to achieve coordination with equipment provided by other trades.
- C. System layout is schematic and exact locations and routing shall be determined in field based on structural elements and other conditions. All changes to system layout, other than minor adjustments required to coordinate with equipment provided by other trades, must be approved in writing by Architect before proceeding with work.
- D. Contractor is required to visit the site and fully familiarize himself with all conditions affecting the scope of work to be performed. Failure to visit the site prior to starting work shall not relieve the contractor from any responsibility regarding his work.
- E. Coordinate location, mounting, and support of equipment as follows:
  - 1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
  - 2. To provide ample space for disconnecting, removal, repair, service, or other changes to equipment.
  - 3. To allow right-of-way for piping, ducts, and raceways installed at required slope.
  - 4. To insure that connecting raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.
- F. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Furnish all materials, labor, tools, transportation, incidentals, and appurtenances to complete in every detail and leave in working order all items of work called for herein or shown on the accompanying drawings.
- B. Include any minor items of work necessary to provide a complete and fully operational system that complies with all required codes.
- C. Comply with National Electrical Contractors Association (NECA) "Standard of Installation".
- D. Equipment or device mounting heights are measured to the bottom of unit for suspended items, and to the center of unit for wall mounted items.
- E. In mechanical and electrical equipment spaces, expose ceiling outlets and conduit with due consideration to ventilating ducts and mechanical piping. Where numerous ducts occur, install conduits and outlets after ventilating ducts have been installed. Puncturing of ductwork or hanging equipment such as light fixtures, ceiling hangers or conduits from ductwork is prohibited.
- F. Where cutting or drilling is required to facilitate raceway penetrations, patch and repair surfaces to their original state. Do not cut or drill structural members without prior written approval of Architect.
- G. Layout holes in advance. Notify Architect prior to drilling through structural sections, for determination of proper layout.
- H. Install buried conduits that pass from building interior to the exterior, below structural footing or grade beams, unless noted otherwise.
- I. Make floor, exterior wall, and roof seals watertight. Use PVC sleeves in walls and floors for precast holes, or core drill walls and floors as approved by Architect for installation of conduit. Caulk and seal annular space around conduit as specified herein.

### 3.3 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Protect all fixtures and equipment against damage from leaks or abuse and pay cost of repair or replacement of damaged items resulting from failure to provide suitable safeguards or protection.
- B. Repair all dents and scratches in factory prime or finish coats on all electrical equipment. Replace equipment with new if damage is excessive.
- C. Upon completion of this project, contractor shall be required to:
  - 1. Thoroughly clean all fixtures and equipment with manufacturer's recommended cleaning agents.
  - 2. Remove stickers, tags, marking, and other foreign matter from all fixtures and equipment.
  - 3. Remove all markings on equipment and building surfaces placed during construction by this contractor.
  - 4. Remove all waste, scrap, excess, and offal entirely from site.
  - 5. Provide any other clean-up services as required to leave every aspect of work in an acceptable, clean and ready-to-use condition.

**END OF SECTION 26 0500**

**SECTION 26 0519**  
**LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
  - 2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
  - 3. Control-voltage conductors and cables.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 26 0500 "Electrical General Provisions".
  - 2. Section 26 0533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems".
  - 3. Section 26 9500 "Inspections and Testing".

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Control-Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.
- B. Plenum: A space forming part of the air distribution system to which one or more air ducts are connected. An air duct is a passageway, other than a plenum, for transporting air to or from heating, ventilating, or air-conditioning equipment.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Include data sheets for the following additional items:
  - 1. Splices and terminations.
  - 2. Pulling compounds.
  - 3. Cable accessories.
  - 4. Field quality-control test reports.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with ASTM.
- C. Comply with UL 44, 83, and 486.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Comply with ANSI.

- F. Perform work in accordance with NECA "Standard of Installation".

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Belden Inc.
  - 2. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
  - 3. Southwire Company.
- B. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- C. Feeders: Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- D. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- E. Conductors: Annealed copper, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658.
- F. Cable: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for armored cable Type MC, Type SO, and Type USE with ground wire.

### **2.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS**

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN/THWN-2, Type XHHW-2, or Type USE single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, Type XHHW-2 single conductors in raceway, or metal-clad cable Type MC where permitted in NFPA 70 for intended location and application.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, Type XHHW-2 single conductors in raceway, or metal-clad cable Type MC where permitted in NFPA 70 for intended location and application.
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, Type XHHW-2 single conductors in raceway, or underground feeder cable, Type UF.
- E. Feeders Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN/THWN-2, Type XHHW-2 single conductors in raceway, or metal-clad cable Type MC where permitted in NFPA 70 for intended location and application.
- F. Feeders in Cable Tray: Type THHN/THWN-2, Type XHHW-2 single conductors in raceway, or metal-clad cable Type MC where permitted in NFPA 70 for intended location and application.
- G. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, Type XHHW-2 single conductors in raceway, or metal-clad cable Type MC where permitted in NFPA 70 for intended location and application.

- H. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, Type XHHW-2 single conductors in raceway, or metal-clad cable Type MC where permitted in NFPA 70 for intended location and application.
- I. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, Type XHHW-2 single conductors in raceway, or underground feeder cable, Type UF.
- J. Branch Circuits Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN/THWN-2, Type XHHW-2 single conductors in raceway, or metal-clad cable Type MC where permitted in NFPA 70 for intended location and application.
- K. Branch Circuits in Cable Tray: Type THHN/THWN-2, Type XHHW-2 single conductors in raceway, or metal-clad cable Type MC where permitted in NFPA 70 for intended location and application.
- L. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain-relief device at terminations to suit application.

## 2.3 CONTROL-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE

- A. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
  - 1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
  - 2. PVC insulation.
  - 3. Unshielded.
  - 4. PVC jacket.
  - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.
- B. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
  - 1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
  - 2. PVC insulation.
  - 3. Unshielded.
  - 4. PVC jacket.
  - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
- C. Low-voltage control cables shall be installed in raceways where concealed in walls, floors or above ceilings. Low-voltage control cables may be installed exposed in open air provided the following criteria are satisfied.
  - 1. Cables are not subject to damage.
  - 2. Cables are provided with plenum rated jackets when installed in environmental air spaces.
  - 3. Cables are properly supported by J-hooks and/or bridle rings.

## 2.4 CONTROL CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN in raceway, complying with UL 83.
- B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN in raceway, complying with UL 83.
- C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type TW or Type TF, complying with UL 83.

## 2.5 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. 3M Electrical Products.
  - 2. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
  - 3. Ideal Industries, Inc.
  - 4. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
  - 5. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
- B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 1. Above grade circuits (No. 10 AWG and smaller):
    - a. Conductors shall be spliced together using solderless, screw-on, reusable pressure cable type connectors, rated 600 V, 90° C, with integral insulation, approved for copper conductors.
    - b. The integral insulator shall have a skirt to completely cover the stripped wires.
    - c. The number, size, and combination of conductors, as listed on the manufacturer's packaging, shall be strictly followed.
  - 2. Above grade circuits (No. 8 AWG and larger):
    - a. Conductors shall be spliced together using cable termination lugs made of high conductivity and corrosion-resistant material, electro-tin plated, listed for use with copper conductors only, rated for 600 V. Lugs shall be color coded by size.
    - b. Cable termination lugs shall be compression indent type, long barrel with chamfered entry; 1-hole type for less than 250 kcmil conductors, and 2-hole type for 250 kcmil conductors and above.
    - c. Install taped covering on cable termination lugs to maintain rated insulation level.
  - 3. Where not provided with equipment, use mechanical type lugs (allen-head screw type) to terminate wire.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION AND PREPARATION

- A. Verify that interior of building has been protected from weather.
- B. Verify that mechanical work likely to damage wire and cable has been completed.
- C. Verify that raceway installation is complete and supported.
- D. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- E. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and other construction for suitable conditions where electrical wiring and cabling will be installed.
- F. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- G. Completely and thoroughly swab raceway before installing wire.



### 3.2 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Minimum Wire Size:
  - 1. #12 AWG conductors for 20 ampere, 120 volt branch circuits not longer than 75 feet, unless noted otherwise.
  - 2. #10 AWG conductors for 20 ampere, 120 volt branch circuits longer than 75 feet, unless noted otherwise.
  - 3. #12 AWG conductors for 20 ampere, 277 volt branch circuits not longer than 200 feet, unless noted otherwise.
  - 4. #10 AWG conductors for 20 ampere, 277 volt branch circuits longer than 200 feet, unless noted otherwise.
  - 5. #16 AWG conductors for low-voltage control cables and control circuit conductors, unless noted otherwise.
- B. Conductor sizes are based on copper. Unless the equipment is listed and marked otherwise, conductor ampacities used in determining equipment termination provisions shall be based on NEC Table 310.15(B)(16) as appropriately modified by 310.15(B)(6).
- C. If aluminum conductor is substituted for copper conductor, size to match circuit requirements for conductor ampacity and voltage drop. Use suitable reducing connectors or mechanical connector adaptors for connecting aluminum conductors to copper conductors. Verify the acceptance of using aluminum conductor with the Architect prior to designing around this type of conductor system.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Multiwire branch circuits complying with the NEC Article 210.4 will be acceptable. Provide each multiwire branch with a means to simultaneously disconnect all ungrounded conductors at the origin of the branch circuit complying with the NEC Sections 210.4.B and 240.15.B. The ungrounded and grounded circuit conductors of each multiwire branch circuit shall be grouped together complying with NEC Section 210.4.D.
- B. Wire and cable routing indicated is approximate unless dimensioned. Where wire and cable destination is indicated and routing is not shown, determine exact routing and lengths required.
- C. All feeder and branch circuit wiring shall be installed in raceways concealed in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Light Fixture Whips: Metal clad cable (Type MC) limited to six feet in length.
- E. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 26 0533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables. Homerun conductors shall be installed unspliced from panelboard to first device or junction box.
- F. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- G. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips that will not damage cables or raceway. Pull all conductors into raceway at same time.
- H. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.

- I. Support cables according to Section 26 0529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- J. Complete cable tray systems installation according to Section 26 0536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems" prior to installing conductors and cables.
- K. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies.

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
  - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

### 3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform inspections and tests listed in Section 26 9500 "Inspections and Testing".
- B. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors, and conductors feeding critical equipment and services for compliance with requirements.
- C. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
- D. Remove and replace non-compliant cables or wires and retest as specified above.
- E. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
  - 1. Test procedures used.
  - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
  - 3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

**END OF SECTION 26 0519**

**SECTION 26 0533  
RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Section Includes:**

1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
2. Nonmetal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Nonmetal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
5. Surface raceways.
6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
7. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

**B. Related Sections:**

1. Section 26 0500 "Electrical General Provisions".
2. Section 26 0519 "Low Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables".
3. Section 26 0526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems".
4. Section 26 0529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems".
5. Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems".

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.
- B. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- C. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.
- D. LFMC: Liquidtight Flexible Metal Conduit.
- E. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with ASTM.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.
- D. Comply with ANSI.
- E. Perform work in accordance with NECA "Standard of Installation".

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept conduit on site and inspect for damage before use.
- B. Protect conduit from corrosion and entrance of debris by covering and storing above grade.
- C. Protect PVC conduit from direct sunlight.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 METAL CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, products of all manufacturers are acceptable provided they have a smooth interior, are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency as defined in NFPA 70 for intended location and application. Conduit and fittings shall be obtained from the same manufacturer.
- B. RMC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- C. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
- D. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.
- E. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
- F. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
  - 1. Fittings for RMC:
    - a. Material: Steel.
    - b. Type: Threaded.
  - 2. Fittings for EMT:
    - a. Material: Steel.
    - b. Type: Set screw – indoors: Compression - outdoors.
  - 3. Fittings for flexible conduit: NEMA FB 1 listed and labeled for type and size of raceway used, and for application and environment in which installed.

4. Joint Compound for RMC: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70 for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

## 2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, products of all manufacturers are acceptable provided they have a smooth interior, are sunlight resistant, and are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency as defined in NFPA 70 for intended location and application. Conduit and fittings shall be obtained from the same manufacturer.
- B. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC or EPC-80-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fittings for RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
- D. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

## 2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. B-line, an Eaton business.
  2. Hoffman; a brand of Pentair Equipment Protection.
  3. MonoSystems, Inc.
  4. Square D.
- B. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1, unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
  1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- D. Wireway Covers: Indoor - Hinged type or Screw-cover type, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Wireway Covers: Outdoors - Flanged-and-gasketed type, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

## 2.4 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Allied Moulded Products, Inc.
  2. Hoffman; a brand of Pentair Equipment Protection.
  3. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.

4. Niedax Inc.

- B. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Description: PVC, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, and having snap-on cover, mechanically coupled connections, and plastic fasteners.
- D. Fittings and Accessories: Couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings shall match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- E. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by manufacturer.

2.5 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
  - 2. MonoSystems, Inc.
  - 3. Panduit Corp.
  - 4. Wiremold / Legrand.
- B. Listing and Labeling: Surface raceways shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Surface Raceways: Steel construction, two-compartment divided raceway with snap-on covers, painted finish. Assembled dimensions approx. 5" x 1.75". Furnish complete with all fittings, boxes, end terminations, and dividers as required to provide layouts shown on the Drawings.

2.6 BOXES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, products of all manufacturers are acceptable provided they are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency as defined in NFPA 70 for intended location and application. Fittings shall be obtained from the same manufacturer.
- B. General Requirements for Boxes and Enclosures: Boxes and enclosures installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- E. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- F. Metal Floor Boxes:
  - 1. Material: Cast metal or sheet metal.
  - 2. Type: Fully adjustable.

3. Shape: Round or rectangular.
4. Flush cover appropriate for use on carpet, tile, or wood-covered flooring as required.

G. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes:

1. Material: PVC.
2. Type: Nonadjustable.
3. Shape: Round or rectangular.
4. Flush cover appropriate for use on carpet, tile, or wood-covered flooring as required.

H. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.

I. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes 100 cu. in. and smaller: NEMA OS 1.

J. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum, galvanized steel, or cast iron with gasketed cover.

K. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.

## 2.7 CABINETS AND ENCLOSURES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Hoffman.
2. Hammond Manufacturing.
3. Wiegmann.

B. Cabinets:

1. Comply with NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

C. Hinged-Cover Enclosures:

1. Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R, with removable interior panel and removable front.
2. Continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
3. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
4. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic or fiberglass.

D. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.8 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Armorcast Products Company.
  - 2. Carson Industries LLC.
  - 3. Quazite: Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
  - 4. Synertech Moulded Products.
- B. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:
  - 1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
  - 2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.
  - 1. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
  - 2. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
  - 4. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
  - 5. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC", unless noted otherwise.
  - 6. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
  - 7. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.
- D. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes: Molded of fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, with frame and covers of fiberglass.
  - 1. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
  - 2. Color of Frame and Cover: Green.
  - 1. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
  - 3. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
  - 4. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC", unless noted otherwise.
  - 5. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
  - 6. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:



1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
2. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: RMC.
3. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
5. Damp or Wet Locations: RMC.
6. Raceways for Optical Fiber or Communications Cable: EMT.
7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, except as noted.

B. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Conduit: RMC.
2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: EMT or RMC.
3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC or Type EPC-80-PVC,
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 1/2 inch trade size.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid Metal Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
2. PVC Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Use sealants recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
3. EMT: Use steel set-screw fittings for indoor applications and steel compression fittings for outdoor applications. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.

E. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- C. Install raceways a minimum 12 inches from ceiling grid, except as noted.
- D. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
  1. Do not support conduit with wire or perforated pipe straps.
  2. Do not attach conduit to ceiling support wires.
  3. Arrange conduit runs to maintain headroom and present a neat appearance.

4. Where a number of conduits are to be run together, they shall be grouped and supported by trapeze hangers or unistrut racks.
- F. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- G. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run. Support conduit within 12 inches of changes in direction.
- H. In finished areas, conceal conduit and EMT within walls, ceilings, chases, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- I. In unfinished areas, run conduit and EMT exposed on walls or ceilings. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- J. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.
- K. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
  1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot intervals.
  2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
  3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 2 inches of concrete cover in all directions.
  4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location. Fittings shall be concrete tight.
- L. Raceways Below Slabs:
  1. Minimum conduit size shall be 1 inch.
  2. Change from PVC conduit to RMC or EMT before rising above floor.
- M. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings for Optical Fiber and Communications Cables:
  1. Conduit type: EMT.
    - a. Minimum size 3/4 inch for conduit runs up to 50 feet.
    - b. Minimum size 1 inch for conduit runs more than 50 feet.
  2. Install a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent, for each length of raceway unless noted otherwise. Comply with these requirements by providing pull or junction boxes in conduit run as required.
  3. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- N. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- O. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- P. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4 inch trade size and insulated throat metal

bushings on 1-1/2 inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.

- Q. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
- R. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
- S. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.
- T. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- U. Surface Raceways:
  - 1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch radius control at bend points.
  - 2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section.
  - 3. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.
- V. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- W. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
  - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  - 2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
  - 3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- X. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.
- Y. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet.
  - 2. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet.
  - 3. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
    - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
    - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
    - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.

- d. Attics: 135 deg F temperature change.
  - 4. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.
  - 5. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
  - 6. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.
- Z. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3.
- 1. Use FMC in dry areas not subject to physical damage.
  - 2. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to physical damage.
  - 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semi-recessed luminaires.
  - 4. Use a maximum of 48 inches of flexible conduit for final connections to motors or equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement, and for primary and secondary connections to dry-type transformers.
- AA. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
- 1. Switches: 48 inches above finished floor.
  - 2. Receptacles or telephone/data outlets: 16 inches above finished floor.
  - 3. Telephone/data outlets next to door: 56 inches above finished floor.
  - 4. Outdoor receptacles: 24 inches above grade or roof surface.
  - 5. Switches, receptacles, or telephone/data outlets at counters: 12 inches above surface.
- BB. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a rain-tight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.
- CC. When flush mounted boxes are installed back-to-back in walls, provide a barrier between boxes consisting of two layers of 5/8" gypsum wallboard to minimize sound transfer and maintain fire rating where applicable. If barrier is not installed between back-to-back boxes, provide minimum 6 inch horizontal separation. Provide minimum 24 inch separation in acoustic-rated walls.
- DD. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- EE. Support boxes of three gangs or more by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- FF. Support boxes per NFPA 70 Article 314.
- GG. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- HH. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

#### A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Install direct buried conduit in compliance with Division 31 requirements, or in the absence of Division 31 sections, install direct buried conduit as follows:
  - a. Excavate by open cut to depths indicated on drawings, or as necessary to provide NFPA 70 minimum required depths, if more stringent.
  - b. Over-excavate organic, soft, spongy, or otherwise unsuitable soils found at or below the bottom of the trench to achieve firm subsoil condition.
  - c. Trenches in non-pavement and non-structure areas:
    - 1) After conduit installation is complete, backfill and compact utilizing native backfill material. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand-tamp backfill material around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction leaving a mound on the surface to accommodate future settlement.
  - d. Trenches under pavement or structures and within 5 feet of same:
    - 1) After conduit installation is complete, backfill with compacted aggregate to 95% standard proctor density in 8 inch maximum lifts. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand-tamp backfill material around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling.
2. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at pole bases, equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, and where conduits penetrate building foundations or floors. Extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
3. Couple steel conduits to underground ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
4. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems." Bury warning tape approximately 12 inches above direct-buried conduits but a minimum of 6 inches below grade. Align tape along centerline of conduit.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2 inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch above finished grade.

- D. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

### 3.5 SLEEVES FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at raceway penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of wall.
  - 2. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor.
  - 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4 inch annular clear space around raceway, unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
- B. Concrete Slabs and Below Grade Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls
  - 1. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe", equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  - 1. Sleeves for rectangular openings: Galvanized sheet steel of length required to suit application.
    - a. For rectangular perimeter cross-section less than 50 inches and no side greater than 16 inches, minimum thickness shall be 0.052 inches.
    - b. For rectangular perimeter cross-section equal to or greater than 50 inches and one or more sides equal to, or greater than 16 inches, minimum thickness shall be 0.138 inches.
- D. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry, and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- E. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation requirements.
- F. Fire-Rated Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway penetrations. Install sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
- G. Roof Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways with flexible, boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- H. Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1 inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION 26 0533**

**This page intentionally left blank.**



**SECTION 26 0573  
OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDY**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Section Includes:**

1. Computer-based studies to determine overcurrent protective devices and device settings for selective tripping for the following:
  - a. Fault-current analysis.
  - b. Overcurrent protective device coordination analysis.
  - c. Arc-flash analysis.

**B. Related Sections:**

1. Section 26 0500 "Electrical General Provisions".
2. Section 26 2416 "Panelboards".
3. Section 26 2816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers".

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. RMS: Root Mean Square.**

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For Coordination Study Specialist.**
- B. Product Certificates: For overcurrent protective device coordination study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.**
- C. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.**
- D. The following submittals shall be made after the approval process for system protective devices has been completed.**
1. Coordination-study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets and system one-line diagram.
  2. Study and equipment evaluation reports.
  3. Fault-current study report.
  4. Coordination study report.
  5. Arc-flash study report.
- E. Submit study reports for action prior to receiving final approval of the distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that the selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.**

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- B. Coordination Study Specialist Qualifications: An entity experienced in the application of computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.
- C. Comply with IEEE 242 for short-circuit currents and coordination time intervals.
- D. Comply with IEEE 399 for general study procedures.
- E. Comply with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E for arc-flash hazard calculations.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE 242, IEEE 399, and IEEE 1584.
- B. Analytical features of the computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
- C. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output. Computer software program shall report device settings and ratings of all overcurrent protective devices and shall demonstrate selective coordination by computer-generated, time-current coordination plots.
  - 1. Optional Features:
    - a. Arcing faults.
    - b. Simultaneous faults.
    - c. Explicit negative sequence.
    - d. Mutual coupling in zero sequence.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals for compliance with electrical distribution system coordination requirements and other conditions affecting performance. Devices to be coordinated are indicated on Drawings.
- B. Proceed with coordination study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to coordination study may not be used in study.

### 3.2 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Gather and tabulate the following input data to support coordination study:
1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Division 26 Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
  2. Impedance of utility service entrance.
  3. Electrical Distribution System Diagram: In hard-copy and electronic-copy formats, showing the following:
    - a. Circuit-breaker and fuse-current ratings and types.
    - b. Relays and associated power and current transformer ratings and ratios.
    - c. Transformer kilovolt amperes, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, and X/R ratios.
    - d. Generator kilovolt amperes, size, voltage, and source impedance.
    - e. Cables: Indicate conduit material, sizes of conductors, conductor material, insulation, and length.
    - f. Busway ampacity and impedance.
    - g. Motor horsepower and code letter designation according to NEMA MG 1.
  4. Data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system diagram, cross-referenced with tag numbers on diagram, showing the following:
    - a. Special load considerations, including starting inrush currents and frequent starting and stopping.
    - b. Transformer characteristics, including primary protective device, magnetic inrush current, and overload capability.
    - c. Motor full-load current, locked rotor current, service factor, starting time, type of start, and thermal-damage curve.
    - d. Generator thermal-damage curve.
    - e. Ratings, types, and settings of utility company's overcurrent protective devices.
    - f. Special overcurrent protective device settings or types stipulated by utility company.
    - g. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
    - h. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes RMS symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
    - i. Manufacturer and type, ampere-tap adjustment range, time-delay adjustment range, instantaneous attachment adjustment range, and current transformer ratio for overcurrent relays.
    - j. Panelboards, switchboards, motor-control center ampacity, and interrupting rating in amperes RMS symmetrical.

### 3.3 FAULT-CURRENT STUDY

- A. Calculate the maximum available short-circuit current in amperes RMS symmetrical at circuit-breaker positions of the electrical power distribution system. The calculation shall be for a current immediately after initiation and for a three-phase bolted short circuit at each of the following:
1. Electric utility's supply termination point.

2. Main switchboard.
  3. Generators and automatic transfer switches.
  4. Distribution panelboards.
  5. Branch circuit panelboards.
  6. Local motor disconnects.
- B. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Include studies of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- C. Calculate momentary and interrupting duties on the basis of maximum available fault current.
- D. Calculations to verify interrupting ratings of overcurrent protective devices shall comply with IEEE 241 and IEEE 242.
1. Transformers:
    - a. ANSI C57.12.22.
    - b. IEEE C57.12.00.
    - c. IEEE C57.96.
  2. Low-Voltage Circuit Breakers: IEEE 1015 and IEEE C37.20.1.
  3. Low-Voltage Fuses: IEEE C37.46.
- E. Study Report:
1. Show calculated X/R ratios and equipment interrupting rating (1/2-cycle) fault currents on electrical distribution system diagram.
- F. Equipment Evaluation Report:
1. For 600-V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
  2. For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication factors listed in the standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
  3. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents; verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.

### 3.4 PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDY

- A. Perform coordination study using approved computer software program. Prepare a written report using results of fault-current study. Comply with IEEE 399.
1. Calculate the maximum and minimum 1/2-cycle short-circuit currents.
  2. Calculate the maximum and minimum interrupting duty (5 cycles to 2 seconds) short-circuits currents.
  3. Calculate the maximum and minimum ground-fault currents.
- B. Comply with IEEE 242 recommendations for fault currents and time intervals.
- C. Comply with NEC Article 700 requirements for selective coordination of overcurrent protective devices in the supply side of emergency system.

D. Transformer Primary Overcurrent Protective Devices:

1. Device shall not operate in response to the following:
  - a. Inrush current when first energized.
  - b. Self-cooled, full-load current or forced-air-cooled, full-load current, whichever is specified for that transformer.
  - c. Permissible transformer overloads according to IEEE C57.96 if required by unusual loading or emergency conditions.
2. Device settings shall protect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.00, for fault currents.

E. Conductor Protection: Protect cables against damage from fault currents according to ICEA P-32-382, ICEA P-45-482, and conductor melting curves in IEEE 242. Demonstrate that equipment withstands the maximum short-circuit current for a time equivalent to the tripping time of the primary relay protection or total clearing time of the fuse. To determine temperatures that damage insulation, use curves from cable manufacturers or from listed standards indicating conductor size and short-circuit current.

F. Coordination-Study Report: Prepare a written report indicating the following results of coordination study:

1. Tabular Format of Settings Selected for Overcurrent Protective Devices:
  - a. Device tag.
  - b. Relay-current transformer ratios; and tap, time-dial, and instantaneous-pickup values.
  - c. Circuit-breaker sensor rating; and long-time, short-time, and instantaneous settings.
  - d. Fuse-current rating and type.
  - e. Ground-fault relay-pickup and time-delay settings.
2. Coordination Curves: Prepared to determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists between devices installed in series, including power utility company's upstream devices. Prepare separate sets of curves for the switching schemes and for emergency periods where the power source is local generation. Show the following information:
  - a. Device tag.
  - b. Voltage and current ratio for curves.
  - c. Three-phase and single-phase damage points for each transformer.
  - d. No damage, melting, and clearing curves for medium and low voltage fuses.
  - e. Cable damage curves.
  - f. Transformer inrush points.
  - g. Maximum fault-current cutoff point.
  - h. Medium voltage equipment relays.

G. Completed data sheets for setting of overcurrent protective devices.

3.5 ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

- A. The arc flash hazard analysis shall be performed according to the IEEE 1584 equations that are presented in NFPA70E-2004, Annex D.

- B. The flash protection boundary and the incident energy shall be calculated at all equipment locations shown on the one-line diagram.
- C. Safe working distances shall be based upon the calculated arc flash boundary considering incident energy of 1.2 cal/cm<sup>2</sup>.
- D. When appropriate, the short circuit calculations and the clearing times of the phase overcurrent devices will be retrieved from the short-circuit and coordination study model. Ground overcurrent relays should not be taken into consideration when determining the clearing time when performing incident energy calculations
- E. The short-circuit calculations and the corresponding incident energy calculations for multiple system scenarios must be compared and the greatest incident energy must be uniquely reported for each equipment location. Calculations must be performed to represent the maximum and minimum contributions of fault current magnitude for all normal and emergency operating conditions. The minimum calculation will assume that the utility contribution is at a minimum and will assume a minimum motor contribution (all motors off). Conversely, the maximum calculation will assume a maximum contribution from the utility and will assume the maximum amount of motors to be operating. Calculations shall take into consideration the parallel operation of synchronous generators with the electric utility, where applicable.
- F. The incident energy calculations must consider the accumulation of energy over time when performing arc flash calculations on buses with multiple sources. Iterative calculations must take into account the changing current contributions, as the sources are interrupted or decremented with time. Fault contribution from motors and generators should be decremented as follows:
  - 1. Fault contribution from induction motors should not be considered beyond 3-5 cycles.
  - 2. Fault contribution from synchronous motors and generators should be decayed to match the actual decrement of each as closely as possible (e.g. contributions from permanent magnet generators will typically decay from 10 per unit to 3 per unit after 10 cycles).
- G. For each equipment location with a separately enclosed main device (where there is adequate separation between the line side terminals of the main protective device and the work location), calculations for incident energy and flash protection boundary shall include both the line and load side of the main breaker.
- H. When performing incident energy calculations on the line side of a main breaker (as required per above), the line side and load side contributions must be included in the fault calculation.
- I. Mis-coordination should be checked amongst all devices within the branch containing the immediate protective device upstream of the calculation location and the calculation should utilize the fastest device to compute the incident energy for the corresponding location.
- J. Arc Flash calculations shall be based on actual overcurrent protective device clearing time. Maximum clearing time will be capped at 2 seconds based on IEEE 1584-2002 section B.1.2. Where it is not physically possible to move outside of the flash protection boundary in less than 2 seconds during an arc flash event, a maximum clearing time based on the specific location shall be utilized.
- K. Prepare a written report indicating the following results of the incident energy and flash protection boundary calculations including:
  - 1. Arcing fault magnitude
  - 2. Protective device clearing time
  - 3. Duration of arc

4. Arc flash boundary
5. Working distance
6. Incident energy
7. Hazard Risk Category
8. Recommendations for arc flash energy reduction
9. Tabular Format of Settings Selected for Overcurrent Protective Devices:

L. Arc Flash Warning Labels

1. The contractor of the Arc Flash Hazard Analysis shall provide and install a 3.5 in. x 5 in. thermal transfer type label of high adhesion polyester for each work location analyzed. Label shall be waterproof and UV-resistant.
2. All labels will be based on recommended overcurrent device settings and will be provided after the results of the analysis have been presented to the owner and after any system changes, upgrades or modifications have been incorporated in the system.
3. The label shall include the following information, at a minimum:
  - a. Location designation
  - b. Nominal voltage
  - c. Flash protection boundary
  - d. Hazard risk category
  - e. Incident energy
  - f. Working distance
  - g. PPE class required
  - h. Engineering report number, revision number and issue date.
4. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field markings.
5. One arc flash label shall be provided for each piece of equipment shown in the one-line diagram.

**END OF SECTION 26 0573**

**This page intentionally left blank.**



## **SECTION 26 2717 EQUIPMENT WIRING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Section Includes:**

1. Electrical connections to equipment provided by others.

**B. Related Sections:**

1. Section 26 0500 "Electrical General Provisions".
2. Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables".
3. Section 26 0533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems".
4. Section 26 2726 "Wiring Devices".

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. HVAC:** Heating Ventilating Air Conditioning.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories:** Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Manufacturer's Catalogs:** Specification manufacturer's catalogs are incorporated by reference to same force and effect as if repeated in full.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.**
- D. Comply with ANSI C2.**
- E. Conform to requirements of ADA – Americans with Disabilities Act.**

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Cords and Caps:** NEMA WD 6; match receptacle configuration at outlet provided for equipment.
1. Attachment Plug Construction: Conform to NEMA WD 1.
  2. Cord Construction: NFPA 70, Type SO multi-conductor flexible cord with identified equipment grounding conductor, suitable for use in damp locations.
  3. Size: Suitable for connected load of equipment, length of cord, and rating of branch circuit overcurrent protection.

- B. Disconnect Switches: As specified in Section 26 2816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers" and in individual equipment sections.
- C. Wiring Devices: As specified in Section 26 2726 "Wiring Devices".
- D. Flexible Conduit: As specified in Section 26 0533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems".
- E. Wire and Cable: As specified in Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables".
- F. Boxes: As specified in Section 26 0533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems".

## 2.2 SERVICE CONNECTIONS TO EQUIPMENT PROVIDED BY OTHERS

- A. Provide wiring and make final connections to equipment provided by others to include, but not limited to:
  - 1. HVAC equipment.
  - 2. Door access control system equipment.
  - 3. Fire alarm system equipment.
  - 4. Public address system equipment.

## 2.3 RELATED WORK BY OTHERS

- A. Related work by others to include, but limited to:
  - 1. HVAC control system and wiring.
  - 2. Fire alarm system.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that equipment is ready for electrical connection, wiring, and energization.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Obtain and review shop drawings, product data, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and manufacturer's instructions for equipment furnished under other sections.
- B. Determine connection locations and requirements.
- C. Sequence rough-in of electrical connections to coordinate with installation of equipment.
- D. Sequence electrical connections to coordinate with start-up of equipment.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Make electrical connections in accordance with equipment manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Make conduit connections to equipment using flexible conduit. Use liquid-tight flexible conduit and watertight connections in damp or wet locations.
- C. Connect heat producing equipment using wire and cable with insulation suitable for temperatures encountered.
- D. Provide receptacle outlet to accommodate connection with attachment plug.
- E. Provide cord and cap where field-supplied attachment plug is required.
- F. Install suitable strain-relief clamps and fittings for cord connections at outlet boxes and equipment connection boxes.
- G. Install disconnect switches, controllers, control stations, and control devices to complete equipment wiring requirements.
- H. Install terminal block jumpers to complete equipment wiring requirements.
- I. Install interconnecting conduit and wiring between devices and equipment to complete equipment wiring requirements.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect devices, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust devices, components, and equipment.
  - 2. Test wiring insulation resistance for each component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
  - 3. Test continuity of each circuit.
  - 4. Verify that voltages at component locations are within plus or minus 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify Architect before starting the motor(s).
  - 5. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
  - 6. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 7. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  - 8. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and components.

**END OF SECTION 26 2717**

**This page intentionally left blank.**

## **SECTION 26 2726 WIRING DEVICES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Straight-blade receptacles.
  - 2. Toggle switches.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 26 0500 "Electrical General Provisions".
  - 2. Section 26 0519 "Low Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables".
  - 3. Section 26 0533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems".

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic Interference.
- B. GFCI: Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupter.
- C. RFI: Radio-Frequency Interference.
- D. SPD: Surge Protective Device.
- E. UTP: Unshielded Twisted Pair.
- F. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

- D. Perform work in accordance with NECA "Standard of Installation".

## 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:
  - 1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
  - 2. Devices shall comply with the requirements in this Section.
- B. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment and Equipment Furnished by Others:
  - 1. Receptacles: Match plug configuration.
  - 2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers' Names: Abbreviations of manufacturers' names shown in parentheses.
  - 1. Cooper Wiring Devices (Arrow Hart).
  - 2. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
  - 3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc. (Leviton).
  - 4. Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

### 2.2 GENERAL WIRING DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Device Color:
  - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System:
    - a. Finished spaces: WHITE.
    - b. Unfinished spaces: GRAY.

### 2.3 STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Heavy duty specification grade complying with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.
  - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Arrow Hart - 5362.
    - b. Hubbell – 5362.
    - c. Leviton – 5362.
    - d. Pass & Seymour – 5362.
- B. Single Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Heavy duty specification grade complying with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.
  - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Arrow Hart – 5361.
  - b. Hubbell – 5361.
  - c. Leviton – 5361.
  - d. Pass & Seymour – 5361.
- C. Tamper-Resistant, Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Heavy duty specification grade complying with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.
  - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Arrow Hart - TR5362.
    - b. Hubbell – 5362TR.
    - c. Leviton – 5362-SGT.
    - d. Pass & Seymour – TR5362.

## 2.4 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. General Description: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
  - 1. 125 V, 20 A, straight blade, feed-through type. Install non-feed-through-type GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.
  - 2. Include indicator light that shows when the GFCI has malfunctioned and no longer provides proper GFCI protection.
- B. Duplex GFCI Receptacles:
  - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Arrow Hart – SGF20.
    - b. Hubbell – GFST20.
    - c. Leviton – GFNT2.
    - d. Pass & Seymour – 2097.
- C. Tamper-Resistant, Duplex GFCI Receptacles:
  - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Arrow Hart – TRSGF20.
    - b. Hubbell – GFR5362SG.
    - c. Leviton – GFTR2.
    - d. Pass & Seymour – 2097TR.

## 2.5 TOGGLE SWITCHES

- A. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.
- B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
  - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Single Pole:

- 1) Arrow Hart – 1221.
- 2) Hubbell – CS1221.
- 3) Leviton – 1221-2.
- 4) Pass & Seymour – CS20AC1.

b. Two Pole:

- 1) Cooper – 1222.
- 2) Hubbell – CS1222.
- 3) Leviton – 1222-2.
- 4) Pass & Seymour – CS20AC2.

c. Three Way:

- 1) Cooper – 1223.
- 2) Hubbell – CS1223.
- 3) Leviton – 1223-2.
- 4) Pass & Seymour – CS20AC3.

d. Four Way:

- 1) Cooper – 1224.
- 2) Hubbell – CS1224.
- 3) Leviton – 1224-2.
- 4) Pass & Seymour – CS20AC4.

## 2.6 WALL PLATES

A. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: Smooth, high-impact thermoplastic, color to match device.
3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RECEPTACLE APPLICATION

- A. In all areas accessible to students: Tamper Resistant receptacles.
- B. In areas not accessible to students: Standard receptacles.
- C. Where required by the current version of the NEC: GFCI receptacles.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.



B. Coordination with Other Trades:

1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:
  - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
  - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
  - c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the left.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

- H. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
- B. Test Instrument for Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
  - 2. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- D. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
  - 1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
  - 2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
  - 3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
  - 4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
  - 5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
  - 6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

**END OF SECTION 26 2726**

## **SECTION 26 5100 INTERIOR LIGHTING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Section Includes:**

1. Interior luminaires, ballasts, and lamps.
2. Exit signs.
3. Luminaire supports.

**B. Related Sections:**

1. Section 26 0500 "Electrical General Provisions".
2. Section 26 0519 "Low Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables".
3. Section 26 0533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems".
4. Section 26 0923 "Lighting Control Devices".

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. BF:** Ballast Factor.
- B. CCT:** Correlated Color Temperature.
- C. CRI:** Color Rendering Index.
- D. LED:** Light emitting diode.
- E. LER:** Luminaire efficacy rating.
- F. Lumen:** Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire:** Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data:** For each type of luminaire, arranged in order of luminaire designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
1. Material and physical description of luminaires including dimensions.
  2. Emergency lighting units including battery and charger.
  3. Low voltage transformers.
  4. LED power supplies
  5. Energy-efficiency data.
  6. Life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy efficiency data for lamps.

7. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing & Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps, ballasts, and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project. Photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency, in IESNA format, based on certified results of laboratory tests of each luminaire type, outfitted with lamps, ballasts and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in the Project.
  - a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
  - b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show details of nonstandard or custom luminaires.
2. Indicate dimensions, weights, method of field assembly, location and size of each field connection, mounting and attachment details, required clearances, components, features and accessories.
3. For custom luminaires, modified luminaires or linear fluorescent luminaires mounted in continuous rows, submit scaled drawings prepared by the manufacturer showing all details of construction, lengths in runs, pendant or power feed locations, accessories, finishes and lists of materials.
4. This Contractor shall provide the manufacturer with accurate field dimensions where required.
5. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Wiring diagrams shall detail wiring for luminaires and differentiate between manufacturer installed and field installed wiring.

- C. Product Certificates shall be signed by manufacturers of luminaires certifying that products comply with requirements.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data shall be provided for luminaires and equipment to include in emergency, operation and maintenance manuals specified in specifications section describing Operations and Maintenance Data.
- E. Field quality control test reports.
- F. Sample warranty.
- G. Special warranties if specified.
- H. Product samples complete with housing, trim, specified lamp, and 8' cord with plug shall be submitted if requested.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to the Authorities Having Jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of product from single source from single manufacturer.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Perform work in accordance with NECA "Standard of Installation".

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver luminaires individually wrapped in factory fabricated fiberboard type containers. Parabolic louvers shall be shipped in thermally sealed polyethylene wrapper.
- B. Handle luminaires carefully to prevent breakage, denting and scouring of the luminaire finish.
- C. Store luminaires in a clean, dry space protected from weather.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with ceiling system and other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them including mechanical system, fire suppression, technology, and partition assemblies.
- B. Provide all frames, supplementary support structures, hangers, spacers, stems, aligner canopies, auxiliary junction boxes and other hardware as required for a complete and proper installation. Recessed luminaires shall have frames that are compatible with the ceiling system.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty for Luminaires: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty for LED arrays and Drivers: Manufacturers standard form in which manufacturer of LED arrays and drivers agrees to replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. LED arrays: 5 years from date of substantial completion.
  - 2. Drivers: 5 years from date of substantial completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. See Lighting Fixture Schedule on Drawings

## 2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR LUMINAIRES

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Recessed Luminaires: Comply with NEMA LE 4 for ceiling compatibility.
- C. Metal Parts: Free of burrs, sharp corners and edges. Metal work shall be free of tool marks and dents and shall have accurate angles bent as sharply as compatible with the gauges of the required metal. Intersections and joints shall be formed true and of adequate strength and structural rigidity to prevent any distortion after assembly. All miters shall be in accurate alignment with abutting intersection members.
- D. Sheet Metal Components: Steel unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging. Luminaires to be painted after fabrication. Finish ferrous mounting hardware and accessories to prevent corrosion and discoloration to adjacent materials.
- E. Luminaire hardware to comply with the following material standards: For steel and aluminum luminaires, all screws, bolts, nuts and other fastening and latching hardware shall be cadmium or equivalent plated. For stainless steel luminaires, all hardware shall be stainless steel. For bronze luminaires, all hardware shall be stainless steel or bronze, unless otherwise noted.
- F. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Safety devices shall be detachable if necessary and shall not interfere with luminaire performance, maintenance or the seating of any luminaire element. Safety device shall not be visible during normal luminaire operation and from normal viewing angles.
- G. Luminaires provided shall have means for disconnection from power source during service, as required in NEC Article 410.
- H. Reflecting Surfaces: Minimum reflectance as follows, unless indicated otherwise:
  - 1. White Surfaces: 85%
  - 2. Specular Surfaces: 90%
  - 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75%
- I. Reflector cones shall adhere to the following:
  - 1. Cones designed for vertically mounted lamps shall provide a minimum of 45 degree cutoff of lamp and lamp image. Cones designed for horizontally mounted lamps shall provide a minimum of 55 degree cutoff of lamp and lamp image. These shall be no visible lamp flashing in the cone.
  - 2. Plastic material shall not be used for reflector cones, unless otherwise specified.
  - 3. Cones shall not be permanently fastened to the housing of ceiling and shall be removable without tools. Retention devices shall not deform the cone or be visible from normal viewing angles.
  - 4. Trim shall be flush to ceiling without gaps or light leaks. Where the flange trim is separate from the cone, it shall have the same finish as the reflector cone. Cones with parabolic cross louvers shall be parallel and perpendicular to adjacent walls.
  - 5. Reflector cones shall be uniform gauge, not less than 0.032" thick, high purity aluminum Alcoa 3002 alloy. Cones shall be free from spin marks or other defects.

6. Manufacture cone using the Alzak process. Refer to Luminaire Schedule for cone color and finish, i.e., specular or diffuse requirements. For compact fluorescent luminaires, finish shall eliminate iridescence.

J. Lenses, Covers, Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Lighting Diffusers: 100% virgin acrylic plastic. UV stabilized, high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
  - a. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Lenses shall have uniform brightness throughout the entire visible area.
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.

- K. Adjustable luminaires shall have positive locking devices to fix aiming angle. Luminaires shall be capable of being relamped without adjusting aiming angle.

- L. Luminaires recessed in suspended ceilings where the space above the ceiling is either an air supply or return plenum shall conform to NEC Article 300-22.

- M. Provide plaster frame for recessed luminaires mounted in other than T-bar ceilings. Verify mounting with architectural reflected ceiling plan before ordering luminaires.

- N. For weatherproof or vapor-tight installations, painted finishes of luminaires and accessories shall be weather resistant enamel using proper primers or galvanized and bonded epoxy, so that the entire assembly is completely corrosion resistant for the service intended. Exterior finishes shall have an outdoor life expectancy of not less than 20 years without any visible rust or corrosion. Where aluminum parts come in contact with bronze or steel parts, apply a coating material to both surfaces to prevent corrosion.

- O. Luminaires for use in areas designated as damp locations shall be suitable gasketed to prevent the entrance of moisture. Provide approved wire mesh screens for ventilation openings. Dissimilar metals shall be separated by non-conductive material to prevent galvanic action.

- P. Luminaires shall be free of light leaks while providing sufficient ventilation of lamps to provide the required photometric performance.

## 2.3 LED LUMINAIRES AND DRIVERS

A. All Luminaires:

1. Comply with IES LM-79-08 Approved Method for measuring lumen maintenance of LED light sources.
2. Comply with IES LM-80-08 Approved Method for electrical and photometric measurement of SSL product.
3. Comply with In-Situ testing for more reliable results.
4. LED's shall be Restriction of Hazardous Substances Directive (RoHS) compliant.
5. LED arrays shall be sealed, high performance, long life type; minimum 70% rated output at 50,000 hours.
6. LED luminaires shall deliver a minimum of 60 lumens per watt.
  - a. LED's shall be "Bin No. 1" quality.
7. Drivers shall be solid state and accept 120 through 277 VAC at 60 Hz input.

8. The LED light source shall be fully dimmable with use of compatible dimmers switch designated for low voltage loads.
9. LED color temperatures: CRI> 85, 2700K as noted +/- 145K.
10. LED color temperatures: CRI> 85, 4000K as noted +/- 275K.
11. LED color temperatures: CRI> 85, 5000K as noted +/- 283K.
12. Luminaires shall have internal thermal protection.
13. Luminaires shall not draw power in the off state. Luminaires with integral occupancy, motion, photo-controls, or individually addressable luminaires with external control and intelligence are exempt from this requirement. The power draw for such luminaires shall not exceed 0.5 watts when in the off state.
14. Color spatial uniformity shall be within .004 of CIE 1976 diagram.
15. Color maintenance over rated life shall be within .007 of CIE 1976.
16. Indoor luminaires shall have a minimum CRI of 85.
17. Luminaire manufacturers shall adhere to device manufacturer guidelines, certification programs, and test procedures for thermal management
18. LED package(s)/module(s)/array(s) used in qualified luminaires shall deliver a minimum 70% of initial lumens, when installed in-situ, for a minimum of 50,000 hours.
19. Luminaires shall be fully accessible from below ceiling plane for changing drivers, power supplies and arrays.

B. Power Supplies and Drivers:

1. Power Factor: 0.90 or higher
2. Maximum driver case temperature not to exceed driver manufacturer recommended in-situ operation.
3. Output operating frequency: 60Hz.
4. Interference: EMI and RFI compliant with FCC 47 CFR Part 15.
5. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: 20% Maximum.
6. Meet electrical and thermal conditions as described in LM-80 Section 5.0.
7. Primary Current: Confirm primary current with Drawings.
8. Secondary Current: Confirm secondary current specified by individual luminaire manufacturers.
9. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with individually specified luminaire and individually specified control components.
10. Solid-state control components to be integral or external per each specified luminaire. Remote control gear to be enclosed in Class 1, Class 2, or NEMA 3R enclosures as required.

C. Controller and Control System

1. System electronics driver / controller to use coordinated communication protocols: DMX512, 0-10V, DALI, or proprietary as required
2. The Contractor to ensure that external control equipment is compatible with LED control requirements
3. Provide connector types and wiring as appropriate for un-interrupted communication between devices, considering distance maximums, field obstructions, and accessibility. Ensure that connection points are optically isolated for system noise reduction.
4. For control components that are part of overall area control system see Dimming Controls Specifications.
5. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with individually specified luminaire and individually specified power supplies and/or drivers.



## 2.4 EXIT SIGNS

- A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with Authorities Having Jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Signs:
  - 1. Lamps for AC Operation: LED, 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life. Red LED type shall be utilized unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Individual LED modules shall not be visible.
  - 2. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Integral automatic charger in a self-contained power pack.
    - a. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
    - b. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
    - c. Operation: Relay automatically energizes lamp from battery when circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
    - d. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
    - e. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
    - f. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.
    - g. Individual LED modules shall not be visible.

## 2.5 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.
- B. Twin-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubes with single canopy arranged to mount a single fixture. Finish shall be the same as the luminaire.
- C. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- D. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.
- E. Aircraft Cable Support shall use cable, anchorages, and intermediate supports recommended by luminaire manufacturer.
- F. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gauge.
- G. Wires for humid spaces shall be ASTM A 580/A 580M, composition 302 or 304, annealed stainless steel, 12 gauge.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Luminaires:
  - 1. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls, and secure according to manufacturers written instructions and approved submittal materials, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Temporary Lighting: If approved by the Architect, use permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. Install and energize the minimum number of luminaires necessary. When construction is sufficiently complete, remove the temporary luminaires; disassemble, clean, install new lamps, and reinstall luminaires.
- C. Mounting height indicated from finished floor to bottom of pendant luminaire unless otherwise noted. Verify mounting heights with Architect.
- D. Mounting height indicated to the center of the outlet box for wall mounted luminaires unless otherwise noted. Verify mounting heights with Architect.
- E. Ceiling Grid-Mounted Luminaire Supports:
  - 1. Secure to any required outlet box.
  - 2. Secure luminaire to the ceiling grid tees, using approved fasteners or clips that are UL listed for the application.
  - 3. Luminaires of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support luminaires independently with at least two 3/4-inch metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling grid tees.
- F. Suspended Luminaire Supports:
  - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
  - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
  - 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
  - 4. Luminaire mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
  - 5. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
  - 6. Continuous Rows: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
  - 7. Do not use grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

8. All power feeds shall originate from the same location/end of each run.
- G. Flush-Mounted Luminaire Supports:
1. Secured to outlet box.
  2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
  3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.
- H. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
1. Attach to junction box securely fastened to building structure or to manufacturer supplied mounting bracket or wall plate. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- I. Provide all necessary hanging or mounting devices and accessories for all luminaires. Verify the types needed for various ceiling conditions. Plaster rings shall be provided where required.
- J. Verify weight and mounting method of all luminaires prior to ordering and provide suitable support. Coordinate with General Contractor for luminaires that require additional blocking or support. Luminaire mounting assemblies shall comply with all local seismic codes and regulations.
- K. Metal decking shall not be pierced for luminaire support.
- L. Refer to architectural reflected ceiling plans for coordination of luminaire locations with mechanical, fire protection, technology and fire safety equipment. Where conflicts occur, coordinate with Architect prior to installing any of the Systems.
- M. In accessible suspended ceilings, luminaire wiring connections, including equipment grounding conductor, is to be through use of 72-inch maximum flexible conduit from a rigidly supported junction box.
- N. Wire per requirements of branch circuit installation. Properly ground each luminaire.
- O. Luminaires located in recessed ceilings with a fire resistive rating of 1 hour or more shall be enclosed in an approved fire resistive rated box equal to that of the ceiling. Acoustical ceiling tiles are not acceptable.
- P. Install luminaires with vent holes free of air blocking obstacles.
- Q. This Contractor shall be responsible for adjusting aperture flanges or rings on all recessed luminaires to be flush with the finished ceiling. Trim shall completely conceal ceiling opening.
- R. Brace suspended luminaires installed near ducts or other elements so that they do not swing into obstructions.
- S. Luminaires shall not be secured to ductwork or other systems.
- T. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

### 3.3 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Remove protective plastic covers from luminaires and luminaire diffusers only after construction work, painting and clean-up are completed. Remove, clean, and reinstall all dirty lamps, reflectors and diffusers.
- B. Clean luminaires internally and externally after installation. Use methods and materials recommended by manufacturer for cleaning Alzak reflectors and other surfaces.
- C. Make final adjustment of aimable luminaires and adjustable light settings under the direction of the Architect during a scheduled period of time prior to the completion of the Project, after normal business hours if required. Include all equipment and personnel expenses including overtime required for focusing.
- D. Luminaires, reflectors, louvers and accessories which are damaged, blemished, or impregnated with fingerprints shall be replaced at this Contractor's expense. All finishes shall be unmarred upon Project completion.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.
- B. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.
- C. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections. Replace or repair luminaire, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.

### **END OF SECTION 26 5100**

**SECTION 26 5600  
EXTERIOR LIGHTING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Section Includes:**

1. Exterior luminaires.
2. Accessories.
3. Luminaire supports.
4. Poles.

**B. Related Sections:**

1. Section 26 0500 "Electrical General Provisions".
2. Section 26 0519 "Low Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables".
3. Section 26 0533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems".
4. Section 26 0923 "Lighting Control Devices".

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CCT: Correlated Color Temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. LED: Light emitting diode.
- D. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- E. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

**A. Product Data:** For each type of luminaire, arranged in order of luminaire designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:

1. Material and physical description of luminaires including dimensions.
2. LED power supplies
3. Energy-efficiency data.
4. Photometric data based on laboratory tests, complying with IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing & Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type.
  - a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
  - b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show details of nonstandard or custom luminaires.
2. Indicate dimensions, weights, method of field assembly, location and size of each field connection, mounting and attachment details, required clearances, components, features and accessories.
3. For custom luminaires or modified luminaires, submit scaled drawings prepared by the manufacturer showing all details of construction, pendant or power feed locations, accessories, finishes and lists of materials.
4. This Contractor shall provide the manufacturer with accurate field dimensions where required.
5. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Wiring diagrams shall detail wiring for luminaires and differentiate between manufacturer installed and field installed wiring.

C. Product Certificates shall be signed by manufacturers of luminaires certifying that products comply with requirements.

D. Pole and Support Component Certificates: Signed by Manufacturers of poles, certifying that products are designed for indicated load requirements in AASHTO LTS-4-M and that load imposed by luminaire and attachments has been included in design. The certification shall be based on design calculations by a Professional Engineer.

E. Operation and Maintenance Data shall be provided for luminaires and equipment to include in emergency, operation and maintenance manuals specified in specifications section describing Operations and Maintenance Data.

F. Field quality control test reports.

G. Sample warranty.

H. Special warranties if specified.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to the Authorities Having Jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of product from single source from single manufacturer.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

E. Perform work in accordance with NECA "Standard of Installation".

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering prior to shipping.
- B. Package poles for shipping according to ASTM B 660.
- C. Store poles on decay-resistant-treated skids at least 12 inches above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.
- D. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation. Handle with web fabric straps.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Verify existing and proposed utility structures prior to the start of work associated with luminaire installation.
- B. Mark locations of exterior luminaires for approval by Architect prior to the start of luminaire installation.
- C. Coordinate depth and location of all luminaire pole bases in all areas.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty for Luminaires: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty for LED arrays and Drivers: Manufacturers standard form in which manufacturer of LED arrays and drivers agrees to replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. LED arrays: 5 years from date of substantial completion.
  - 2. Drivers: 5 years from date of substantial completion.
- C. Warranty for Poles: Repair or replace lighting poles and standards that fail in finish, materials, and workmanship within manufacturer's standard warranty period, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. See Lighting Fixture Schedule on Drawings

### 2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR LUMINAIRES

- A. Luminaires shall comply with UL 1598 and be listed and labeled for installation in wet locations by an NRTL acceptable to Authorities Having Jurisdiction.
- B. Comply with IESNA RP-8 for parameters of lateral light distribution patterns indicated for luminaires.
- C. Comply with IESNA TM-15-07 Luminaire Classification System for Outdoor Luminaires.
- D. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- E. Housings: Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosures that will not warp, sag, or deform in use. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.
- F. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses. Designed to disconnect ballast when door opens.
- G. Exposed Hardware Material: Stainless steel.
- H. Plastic Parts: High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
- I. Light Shields: Metal baffles, factory installed and field adjustable, arranged to block light distribution to indicated portion of normally illuminated area or field.
- J. Optical assemblies: full cutoff with zero uplight, "dark sky" compliant. LED assemblies shall comply with BUG rating system.
- K. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
  - 2. Specular Surfaces: 90 percent.
  - 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
- L. Lenses and Refractors Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
- M. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.
- N. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - 1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
  - 2. Finish: premium 5 stage TGIC polyester powder coat paint.
    - a. Color: See Luminaire Schedule.
- O. Outdoor Wall Mounted Area Luminaires:



1. Shall have minimum 52 lumens per watt.
2. No more than 48% of the total luminaire output shall be within the forward 60-80° zone.
3. No more than 3% of the total luminaire output shall be in the forward 80-90° zone.
4. No light at or above horizontal 90-180° zone.

## 2.3 LED DRIVERS AND ARRAYS

- A. UL 1598 listing.
- B. LED arrays shall have LED's that produce minimum 55 lumens/watt when operated at 350mA.
  1. Lumen Depreciation Data: At 40 deg C ambient, the L70 hours shall be 50,000 at 520 mA driver.
  2. LED color: neutral white, 4100 deg K, CRI of 75.
- C. Drivers shall accept 120 through 480 volts, 50/60 Hz.
- D. The housing shall have an integral thermal management system with extruded aluminum radiation fins and lateral airways.
- E. Comply with IES LM-79-08 and LM-90-08 Approved Methods.
- F. Comply with In-Situ testing for more reliable results.
- G. LED's shall be Restriction of Hazardous Substances Directive (RoHS) compliant.

## 2.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLES AND SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mountings, Fasteners, and Appurtenances: Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.
  1. Materials: Shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
  2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Anchor-Bolt Template: Plywood or steel.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical conduit to verify actual locations of conduit connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, roofs, canopy ceilings and overhang ceilings for suitable conditions where luminaires will be installed.

- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 26 0533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch-thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

### 3.3 GROUNDING

- A. Ground metal poles and support structures according to Section 26 0526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.
- B. Replace all burned out or inoperative LED arrays at time of Substantial Completion, prior to Owner occupancy.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
  - 2. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
- D. Malfunctioning Luminaires and Components: Replace or repair, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.
- E. Illumination Tests:
  - 1. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IESNA testing guide(s):
    - a. IES LM-5 "Guide for Photometric Measurements of Area and Sports Lighting Installations".
    - b. IES LM-50 "Guide for Photometric Measurement of Roadway Lighting Installations".
    - c. IES LM-52 "Guide for Photometric Measurements of Roadway Sign Installations".
    - d. IES LM-64 "Guide for Photometric Measurements of Parking Areas".
    - e. IES LM-72 "Directional Positioning of Photometric Data".
- F. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.END OF SECTION 26 5600

**SECTION 26 9500  
INSPECTIONS AND TESTING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Section Includes:**

1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - a. Insulation resistance test.
  - b. Grounding electrode test.
  - c. Continuity test.
  - d. Voltage test.
  - e. Phase relationship verification.
  - f. Fire alarm acceptance test.
2. Test reports.
3. Correction of defective components or systems.
4. Re-test of corrected components, systems.

**B. Related Sections:**

1. Section 26 0500 "Electrical General Provisions".
2. Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables".
3. Section 28 3100 "Fire Alarm System".

**1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Products: Listed and classified by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.
- B. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code.
- C. Conform to requirements of ANSI C2 – National Electrical Safety Code.
- D. Perform work in accordance with NECA (National Electrical Contractors Association) – "Standard of Installation".
- E. Perform work in accordance with NETA ATS (InterNational Electrical Testing Association) – Acceptance Testing Specifications.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Test reports: Submit (3) copies of all test reports to Architect.
  1. Type each test report on 8 ½ x 11 in. paper and include:
    - a. Project name and location.

- b. Test performed.
  - c. Date performed.
  - d. Test equipment used.
  - e. Electrical contractor's name, address and telephone number.
  - f. Testing firm's name, address and telephone number.
  - g. Name(s) and title(s) of person(s):
    - 1) Performing test.
    - 2) Observing test.
  - h. Statement verifying each test.
  - i. Nameplate data from each motor and equipment item tested.
  - j. Test results.
  - k. Re-test results after correction of defective components, systems.
2. For each copy, assemble all test reports and bind them in a folder. Label each folder, "Electrical Test Reports" and include project name and location.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Furnish all equipment, manpower and casual labor to perform specified testing.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Ensure that all electrical work is complete and ready for testing.
- B. Disconnect all devices or equipment that might be damaged by application of test voltages, voltage of reversed phase sequence or other test procedures.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and all feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:
    - a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
    - b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:
      - 1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
      - 2) Calibrated torque wrench.
      - 3) Thermographic survey.
    - c. Inspect compression applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
    - d. Inspect for correct identification.
    - e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.

- f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor with respect to ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
  - g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
  - h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.
- D. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:
  - 1. Procedures used.
  - 2. Results that comply with requirements.
  - 3. Results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

### 3.2 TESTING

- A. Conduct tests and adjust equipment to verify compliance with specified performance.

### 3.3 INSULATION RESISTANCE TESTS

- A. Resistance measured; line-to-ground.
- B. Perform testing on the following items (minimum acceptance):
  - 1. No.2 and larger cables.
    - a. Voltage of test - 1000V.
    - b. Resistance in MegaOhms – 50.
  - 2. Motors.
    - a. Voltage of test - 500V.
    - b. Resistance in MegaOhms – 5.
  - 3. Panelboards.
    - a. Voltage of test - 1000V.
  - 4. Resistance in MegaOhms – 25.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- D. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
  - 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
  - 2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
  - 3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
- E. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

### 3.4 CONTINUITY TESTS

- A. Test branch circuits and control circuits to determine continuity of wiring and connection.

### 3.5 VOLTAGE TESTS

- A. Make and record voltage tests and recorded at the following listed points. Conduct tests under normal load conditions.
  - 1. Service entrance at main switch.
  - 2. Secondary terminals of all step down transformers.
  - 3. Terminals of all motors.

### 3.6 PHASE RELATIONSHIP

- A. Examine connections to equipment for proper phase relationships. Verify proper motor rotation.

### 3.7 FIRE ALARM ACCEPTANCE TEST

- A. Have the fire alarm acceptance test performed by the Alarm Company Representative and installing contractor.
- B. Acceptance Test Procedures:

Panel/Receiving Station	Indication on Remote Station
1. Normal power to panel .....	(Secure/Normal)
2. Disconnect power to panel .....	(Trouble)
3. Activate detection device .....	(Alarm)
4. Silence alarm signaling devices .....	(Trouble)
5. Return normal power to panel & reset panel .....	(Secure/Normal)
6. Place each function switch in an abnormal position .....	(Trouble)
7. Remove supervised devices from system (during this portion of testing, ensure proper wire has been used and devices are properly installed .....	(Secure/Normal)
8. Return supervised device to system .....	(Secure/Normal)
9. Disconnect normal power to panel .....	(Trouble)
10. Activate detector(s) for each zone .....	(Alarm)
11. Inspect all horns, bells, zone Indication and auxiliary devices .....	(Working List)
12. Silence horns and bells .....	(Alarm/Trouble)
13. Reset system .....	(Trouble)
14. Return normal power to system .....	(Secure/Normal)
15. Place panel in alarm condition - disconnect primary power source for a minimum of 15 seconds and return to normal power (the above transfer procedure shall not cause a loss of an alarm condition at receiving Station.)	

### 3.8 CORRECTION OF DEFECTS

- A. When tests disclose any unsatisfactory workmanship or equipment furnished under this Contract, correct defects and re-test. Repeat tests until satisfactory results are obtained.
- B. When any wiring or equipment is damaged by tests, repair or replace such wiring or equipment. Test repaired items to ensure satisfactory operation.

**END OF SECTION 26 9500**

**This page intentionally left blank.**



## **SECTION 31 1600 SITE PREPARATION**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Protecting existing plants and grass to remain
  - 2. Removing and disposing of existing trees, shrubs, plants, and grasses
  - 3. Clearing and grubbing
  - 4. Stripping and stockpiling topsoil
  - 5. Removing and disposing of above and below grade site structures and appurtenances
  - 6. Removing and disposing of pavements and sidewalks
  - 7. Disconnecting and capping or sealing site utilities
  - 8. Temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures
  - 9. Salvaging of specified materials for the Owner

#### **1.2 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP**

- A. Except indicated items to remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from or when applicable incorporated into the Project site.

#### **1.3 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
  - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Salvable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on Owner's premises where indicated.
- C. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before site clearing.
- D. Do not commence site clearing operations until Erosion Control Measures and any required Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plans (SWPPP) provisions are in place.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 SOIL MATERIALS**

- A. Satisfactory Soil Materials: Requirements for satisfactory soil materials are specified in Section 31 2300 "Excavation and Fill".

1. Obtain approved borrow soil materials off-site when satisfactory soil materials are not available on-site.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- B. Locate and clearly flag trees and vegetation to remain or to be relocated.
- C. Provide to the Owner digital photography of existing site conditions prior to start of work including pavements to remain and which will be used during construction.
- D. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
  1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

#### **3.2 TREE PROTECTION**

- A. Erect and maintain temporary fencing around tree protection zones before starting site clearing. Remove fence when construction is complete.
- B. Do not excavate within tree protection zones, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Repair or replace trees and vegetation indicated to remain that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by Architect.

#### **3.3 UTILITIES**

- A. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utilities indicated to be removed.
  1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.
- B. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.

#### **3.4 CLEARING AND GRUBBING**

- A. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.

B. Tree removal:

1. Cut off trees and stumps at the existing ground level. Remove stumps and roots as needed.
2. Remove trees and stumps within 2 feet of the proposed structures and underground piping to a depth of not less than 12 inches below the base elevation of proposed structures or underground piping.

C. Protection of persons and property:

1. Barricade open depressions and holes occurring as part of this Work, and post warning lights on property adjacent to or with public access.
2. Operate warning lights during hours from dusk to dawn each day and as otherwise required.
3. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by operations under this Section.

3.5 TOPSOIL STRIPPING

- A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.
- B. Strip and stockpile topsoil materials per Section 31 2300 Excavation and Fill.

3.6 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

- A. Remove existing above and below grade structures, foundations, pavements and improvements as indicated and as necessary to facilitate new construction.
- B. Pavements to be removed adjacent to pavement or structures to remain shall be saw cut to provide a uniform edge.
- C. Below grade structures to be removed shall be removed to a minimum of three (3) feet below proposed grade unless in conflict with proposed improvements which may require full removal and disposal.

3.7 DISPOSAL

- A. Disposal: Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- B. Do not burn debris at the site.
- C. Do not conduct any generation, transportation, or recycling of construction or demolition debris, clean or general or uncontaminated soil generated during construction, remodeling, repair, and demolition of utilities, structures, and roads that is not commingled with any waste, without the maintenance of documentation identifying the hauler, generator, place of origin of the debris or soil, the weight or volume of the debris or soil, and the location, owner, and operator of the facility where the debris or soil was transferred, disposed, recycled or treated. Maintain documentation for three years.

**END OF SECTION 31 1000**

**SECTION 31 2300  
EXCAVATION AND FILL**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Excavate, backfill, compact, and grade the site to the elevations shown on the Drawings, as specified herein, and as needed to meet the requirements of the construction shown in the Contract Documents.
- B. Related work:
  - 1. Documents affecting work of this Section include, but are not necessarily limited to, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Sections in Division 1 of these Specifications.

**1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. The owner will provide Field Quality Controls Testing as specified herein:
- B. Perform excavation and embankment work in compliance with applicable rules and regulations of IEPA and OSHA.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 SOIL MATERIALS**

- A. General embankment and backfill materials:
  - 1. Predominately granular or non-expansive soils, free from organic matter and deleterious substances, containing no rocks over 3" in greatest dimension and having a minimum Standard Proctor Density of not less than 100 lbs/cu ft.
  - 2. Material is subject to the approval of the A/E, and may be removed from onsite excavations or imported from off-site borrow areas.
  - 3. The upper 12" of fill or embankment shall not have rocks greater than 1" in dimension.
- B. Structure embankment and backfill materials:
  - 1. In addition to the General embankment requirements, soils placed beneath and within 10 feet structures or pavements shall have a liquid limit of less than 45% and a plasticity index of less than or equal to 25%.

**2.2 TOPSOIL**

- A. Topsoil shall consist of friable, fertile soil of a loamy character. It shall be relatively free from large roots, sticks, weeds, brush, or stones larger than 1 inch in diameter, or other litter and

waste products. At least 90 percent must pass the No. 10 sieve and the pH must be between 5.5 and 7.0.

- B. Obtain topsoil from sources within the project limits, or provide imported topsoil obtained from sources outside the project limits, or from both sources

### 2.3 GRANULAR FILL

- A. Material consisting of crushed stone reasonably well graded from 1" to no more than 20% passing the 200 sieve.
- B. Drainage Layers: Material consisting of clean crushed stone or gravel graded from 1" to no more than 5% passing the 200 sieve.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SURFACE CONDITIONS

- A. Examine the areas and conditions under which work of this Section will be performed. Correct conditions detrimental to timely and proper completion of the Work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

### 3.2 FINISH ELEVATIONS AND LINES

- A. Finish grading shall be to contours or elevations indicated on the drawings. Rocks and other debris unearthed during finish grading operations shall be removed from construction area and disposed of elsewhere.
- B. The Contractor shall provide field engineering services as required but not limited to:
  - 1. Establish and maintain lines and levels.
  - 2. Structural design of shores, forms, and similar items as part of his/her means and methods of construction.

### 3.3 PROCEDURES

- A. Utilities:
  - 1. Unless shown to be removed, protect active utility lines shown on the Drawings or otherwise made known to the Contractor prior to excavating. If damaged, repair or replace at no additional cost to the Owner.
  - 2. If active lines are encountered, and are not shown on the Drawings or otherwise made known to the Contractor, promptly take necessary steps to assure that service is not interrupted.
  - 3. If service is interrupted as a result of work under this Section, immediately restore service by repairing the damaged utility at no additional cost to the Owner.
  - 4. If existing utilities are found to interfere with the permanent facilities being constructed under this Section, immediately notify the Engineer/Architect (A/E) to secure instructions from the Owner or his/her onsite representative.

5. Do not proceed with permanent relocation of utilities until written instructions are received from the Owner or his/her onsite representative.

B. Protection of persons and property:

1. Furnish, install and maintain barricades, warning lights, and/or warning tape at open holes and depressions or other potential hazards occurring as part of this Work.
2. Operate warning lights during hours from dusk to dawn each day and as otherwise required.
3. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, washout, and other hazards created by operations under this Section.
4. Provide traffic control items in accordance with the Manual of Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD), and the requirements of the governmental agency having jurisdiction, when work is being complete on or adjacent to public streets and/or Right-of-ways.

C. Dewatering:

1. Remove all water, including rainwater, encountered during trench and substructure work to an approved location by pumps, drains, and other approved methods.
2. Keep excavations and site construction area free from water.

D. IEPA Storm Water Permit:

1. The project will result in disturbance of one (1) or more acres of land **will** require compliance with the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Storm Water Permit.
2. If required:
  - a. The Contractor and will be required to certify that he/she understands and will comply with all requirements of the permit.
  - b. The Contractor shall be responsible for developing and implementing a storm water pollution prevention plan in accordance with good engineering practice.
  - c. The plan shall identify potential sources of pollution, which may be expected to affect the quality of storm water discharges. In addition, the plan shall describe and ensure the implementation of practices which will be used to reduce the pollutants in the storm water discharges associated with the project. A copy of the permit form and a sample plan if not a part of these specifications can be obtained at the A/E's office.
3. If not required:
  - a. The Contractor shall be responsible for developing and implementing storm water pollution prevention measures in accordance with good engineering practice, as shown on the plans and in compliance with state and local regulations.

### 3.4 CLEARING AND STRIPPING

- A. Clear the site by removing and disposing of all obstructions such as fences, walls, foundations, buildings, accumulations of rubbish of whatever nature, shrubs, bushes, saplings, grass, weeds, stumps and other vegetation to a depth of at least 12" below proposed ground surface or proposed subgrade, whichever is lower. Removed materials shall be properly disposed offsite.

- B. After the area is cleared, strip topsoil to the depth of maximum 10" in areas of proposed structures or pavements.
- C. Sufficient topsoil shall be stockpiled in an area clear of the proposed construction for placement to a depth of 4" in proposed areas of turf, plantings and to fill planters. Excess topsoil shall be removed offsite or incorporated into the embankment, if acceptable, in areas not requiring structural fill.

### 3.5 EXCAVATING

- A. Perform excavation within the project limits to the lines, grades, and elevations indicated and specified herein.
- B. Excavated Materials:
  - 1. Satisfactory materials shall be used for fill or embankments within the project limits.
  - 2. Unsatisfactory materials shall be excavated to a depth below grade sufficient to provide a suitable subgrade support, and backfill and compact with satisfactory materials.
- C. Surplus materials:
  - 1. Dispose of unsatisfactory excavated materials, and surplus excavated material, offsite at disposal areas arranged and paid for by the Contractor.
- D. Excavate and backfill in a manner and sequence that will provide proper drainage at all times.
- E. Off-site Borrow:
  - 1. Obtain material required for fill or embankment in excess of that produced within the grading limits of the project from borrow areas selected and paid for by the Contractor and approved by the Owner or his/her representative. The Contractor shall obtain written agreements from the property owners for the removal of the materials.
- F. Stability of Excavations:
  - 1. Perform excavations and trenches in accordance with OSHA excavating and trenching rules and regulations.
  - 2. Slope sides or shore and brace where sloping is not possible because of space restrictions of stability of the materials being excavated.
  - 3. Maintain sides and slopes of excavations in a safe condition until completion of backfilling.
- G. Excavating for Structures:
  - 1. Excavate to elevations and dimensions shown for building pad within a tolerance of 0.05ft., and extending a sufficient distance from footings and foundations to permit placing and removing concrete formwork, installation of services and for inspection.
  - 2. Excavation for footings, piers and foundations shall be by the Building Contractor.
- H. Excavating for pavements:
  - 1. Excavate subgrade under pavements to within 0.05 ft of the proposed subgrade.
  - 2. Prepare subgrade as specified herein.



I. Cold weather protection:

1. Protect excavation surfaces from freezing when an atmospheric temperature is less than 35 degrees F.

3.6 FILLING AND BACKFILLING

A. Backfill excavations as promptly as progress of the Work permits, but not until:

1. Acceptance of construction below finish grade.
2. Concrete formwork is removed.
3. Shoring and bracing are removed, and voids have been backfilled with satisfactory materials.
4. Trash and debris have been removed.

B. Ground surface preparation:

1. Remove vegetation, topsoil, obstructions, and deleterious materials from the ground surface prior to placement of embankment per Section 3.4.
2. Disk excavated area to a depth of 8", unless sand or aggregate. Proof roll and prepare the surface per Section 3.8-D. Unsuitable material or material not achieving the specified stability, density and moisture requirements after three consecutive good drying days of moisture conditioning and compaction, consisting of at least two processing's utilizing discs or tillers, shall be removed and/or replaced, or shall be further treated per instructions of the soils engineer. Additional work or materials required after the three day conditioning period to stabilize the material, when approved in writing by the Owner or his/her representative, shall be performed and paid for in accordance with the General Conditions.

C. Placing and compacting:

1. Place backfill and fill materials in layers not more than 8" in loose depth, unless otherwise approved by the A/E.
2. Before compacting, moisten or aerate each layer as necessary to provide the specified moisture content.
3. Compact each layer to required percentage of maximum density for the area.
4. Do not place backfill or fill material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or containing frost or ice.
5. Place backfill and fill materials evenly adjacent to structures, to required elevations.
6. Prevent wedging action of backfill against structures by carrying the material uniformly around the structures to approximately the same elevation in each lift.
7. The building embankment shall be constructed at minimum 5 feet beyond the proposed building line.
8. Placement of granular working platform material beneath the proposed building granular drainage layer will be completed by the Site Contractor.
9. Placement of granular drainage material beneath the floor slab will be completed by the Building Contractor.

### 3.7 GRADING

#### A. General:

1. Uniformly grade the areas within project limits under this Section, including adjacent transition areas.
2. Finished surfaces within specified tolerance.
3. Compact with uniform levels or slopes between points where elevations are shown on the Drawings, or between such points and existing grades.
4. Where a change of slope is indicated on the Drawings, construct a rolled transition section having a minimum radius of approximately 8'-0", unless adjacent construction will not permit such a transition, or if such a transition defeats positive control of drainage.

#### B. Grading inside building lines:

1. Provide drainage away from structures during construction of the embankments to prevent ponding.
2. Finish surface within 0.05 foot of the proposed subbase elevation.

#### C. Grading outside building lines:

1. Provide drainage in areas adjacent to buildings away from the structures, and to prevent ponding.
2. Finish areas under walks and pavements to within 0.05 ft above or below the required subgrade elevation.

### 3.8 COMPACTING

#### A. Control material compaction during construction to provide the minimum Standard Proctor Density (SPD) specified, within moisture requirements, for each area as determined according to (ASTM D 698).

#### B. Provide not less than the following minimum densities for layer or lift of material placed:

1. Backfill or embankment under buildings, structures or within a 1:1 projected slope outside the finish structure grade @ 95% of Standard Proctor Density.
2. Backfill or embankment under pavements, walks, slabs or within a 1:1 projected slope outside the finish grade @ 95% of Standard Proctor Density.
3. All other backfill or embankment areas @ 85% of Standard Proctor Density.
4. Fills or embankments under buildings, structures, pavements, walks, slabs, and the projected slopes:
  - a. Prepared existing surface @ 95% of Standard Proctor Density.
  - b. The lower 1/4 of embankments greater than 4 ft in height but not exceeding the lower 2 ft. @ 90% of Standard Proctor Density.
  - c. Remainder as specified above.

#### C. Moisture control:

1. Moisture content for compaction purposes shall be within the range of 4% below to 2% above optimum moisture as established by ASTM D698.

2. Process material to provide uniform moisture and clod reduction throughout.
3. Unsuitable material removed due to high moisture may be spread and allowed to dry until suitable.

D. Proof roll:

1. Prior to placement of granular subbase material on building and pavement areas, the subgrade shall be "proof rolled" with a minimum 25 ton gross vehicle weight (G.V.W.) truck to identify areas of soft or unstable subgrade. Any areas of significant deflection shall be removed and recompacted until stable.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. The Owner will provide testing services of a soils engineer and/or independent laboratory for this project.

B. Upon completion of each test and/or inspection, promptly distribute copies of test or inspection reports to the A/E.

C. Testing Requirements:

1. Pentrometer Tests:

- a. 1 per each spread footing.
- b. 1 per 25' of lineal footing.

2. Standard Proctor Density/Moisture (ASTM D 698):

- a. 1 per the insitu fill material.
- b. 1 per each source of offsite fill material.

3. Field density/moisture tests (ASTM D6938):

- a. Paved Areas: 1 per 5000 sq ft per 8" lift.
- b. Building Area: 1 per 5000 sq ft per 8" lift.

4. Liquid Limit and Plasticity Index

- a. Building Area: 1 per each source of offsite fill material.

D. Field Grade Confirmation:

1. In addition to providing necessary construction staking to install the site work, the Contractor shall provide tolerance confirming grades by a licensed surveyor to the A/E for earth and aggregate final subgrade or sub-base surfaces in all building and pavement areas.

### 3.10 MAINTENANCE

A. Protection of newly graded areas:

1. Protect newly graded areas from traffic and erosion, and keep free from trash and weeds;

2. Repair and reestablish grades in settled, eroded, and rutted areas to the specified tolerances.
- B. Where completed compacted areas are disturbed by subsequent construction operations or adverse weather, scarify the surface, reshape, and compact to the required density prior to final inspection and acceptance of the site work.

**END OF SECTION 31 2300**

## **SECTION 32 1313 CONCRETE PAVING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes exterior Portland cement concrete (PCC) pavement and appurtenances for the following:
  - 1. Driveways and Roadways
  - 2. Parking lots
  - 3. Sidewalks

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete pavement mixture.
- C. Pavement Jointing Plan

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer of ready-mixed concrete products who complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
- B. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

#### **1.4 REFERENCES**

- A. *Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction*, January 1, 2012, Illinois Department of Transportation (IDOT) herein noted as the Standard Specifications.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 STEEL REINFORCEMENT**

- A. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- B. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497, flat sheet.
- C. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60; deformed, epoxy coated.
- D. Plain Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, as drawn.

- E. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496.
- F. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars, welded wire reinforcement, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

## 2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Comply with the following as minimums:
  - 1. Portland cement: ASTM C150, Type I.
  - 2. Aggregate: ASTM C33, uniformly graded and clean.
  - 3. Aggregate, coarse: Crushed rock or washed gravel. (Max. Size 3/4" to 1 1/2", w/ 0 - 12% passing #4)
  - 4. Aggregate, fine: Natural washed sand. (Max. Size 3/8" with 3 - 30% passing #50)
  - 5. Water: Clean and potable.
  - 6. Admixtures: Air entraining and/or water reducing agents of standard brand as approved.
  - 7. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F.
- B. At least six test cylinders shall be made from trial batches of the design proposed. Two of these shall be broken at 7 days, two at 14 days, and two at 28 days. In lieu of test cylinders the Contractor may furnish a certificate from the concrete supplier that the proposed mix design has been satisfactorily used on other work and that it will meet the requirements of the specifications.
- C. Classes of concrete:

Class	Uses	Strength (14 days)	*Cement Content (min)
"SI" per Std. Specs	Exterior Structural elements, Slabs on Grade, General Concrete	3,500 psi	571 - lbs/Cu Yd

\*Fly Ash may be substituted in accordance with Sec. 2.2 G.

- D. Consistency shall be such that the mixture can be worked into all parts of the forms and around the reinforcing steel of the structure, without segregation of the materials or the appearance of free water on the surface of the concrete. Unless otherwise stated, the slump measured in accordance with ASTM C143 shall be within the following limits.
  - 1. Floors, walks, and slabs 2" to 4"
  - 2. Forms 9" wide or over 2" to 4"
  - 3. Forms less than 9" wide 3" to 5"
- E. All concrete be air entrained, containing between 4% and 7% entrained air, after mixing is complete and just prior to placement.
- F. Pumped concrete shall comply with ACI 304 and these specifications.

- G. Fly Ash shall not be used after October 15 and before April 1. The amount of fly ash shall not exceed 20% of cementitious material and the replacement ratio (fly ash to cement replaced) shall be a minimum of 1.5:1.

## 2.3 AGGREGATE BASE COURSE

### A. Aggregate Base Course:

- 1. Article 1004.04 - CA-6, Type B of the Standard Specifications.

## 2.4 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Water: Potable.
- D. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming; manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- E. Clear Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
- F. White Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 2, Class B.

## 2.5 CONCRETE PROTECTION

- A. All concrete pavements, sidewalk and curb and gutters shall be treated with a colloidal silicate or silicate based penetrating concrete preservative/sealer treatment such as Aquaron CPT-2000, DRYCRETE Moisture Stop, or approved equal product.

## 2.6 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.
- B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Latex, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952, with drying time of less than 45 minutes. The Architect/Engineer shall approve the paint manufacturer.
  - 1. Color: Yellow for Accessibility Parking stripes and hatching. White for all other stripes, symbols, words, and hatching.

## 2.7 DETECTABLE WARNING PANELS

### A. Detectable Warnings.

- 1. Detectable Warnings shall consist of a surface of truncated domes meeting the requirements of the ADAAG and the details show on the plans. The installation shall be an integral part of the walking surface and only the domes shall project above the walking

surface. The panel shall be available in standard colors to allow a contrasting appearance. Panel color shall be throughout the entire thickness. The panels shall carry a minimum five (5) year manufacturer's warranty.

2. The material, equipment and installation procedures used shall be according to the manufacturer's specifications.

## 2.8 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Proof roll: After the Contractor has finish graded the base course, the subgrade shall be "proof rolled" with a minimum 25 ton gross vehicle weight (G.V.W.) truck to identify areas of soft or unstable subgrade. Any areas of significant deflection shall be immediately repaired and retested.
- B. Compact aggregate base course to 98% Standard Proctor Density.

### 3.2 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides for pavement to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

### 3.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Epoxy coated bars will not be required.

### 3.4 JOINTS

- A. General: Joints in sidewalks and driveways shall be by tooling while the concrete is plastic. Sawed joint may be allowed in pavements and curbs. All sidewalks, driveways and pavements shall be edged. Deformed steel tie bars in Longitudinal Construction Joints shall be placed by drilling and epoxy setting when adjacent slabs are to be constructed separately. Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edgings true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of pavement and at locations where pavement operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless pavement terminates at isolation joints.



- C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, walks, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
- D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Sawed contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness. Sidewalk joints shall be tooled and not sawed.
- E. Edging: Tool edges of pavement, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete after initial floating with an edging tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate tool marks on concrete surfaces. Tool joints on all sidewalks and in locations indicated on the Drawings.
- F. Contractor shall submit a jointing plan for approval by owner's representative prior to placing any concrete pavement.

### 3.5 CONCRETE PLACEMENT AND FINISHING

- A. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed.
- B. Comply with ACI 301 requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- C. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- D. Strike Off, Consolidation and Finishing: The pavement may be placed utilizing an approved vibrating screed or other approved strike-off and consolidating machine that provides a surface that is uniform texture, true to grade and cross section and free from porous areas. Additional consolidation with handheld or machine vibrators in front of strike off may be necessary if adequate consolidation is not being achieved. Longitudinal hand bull floating with a float having a min. width of 5 ft for non-vehicular slabs and a min. width of 10 ft for vehicular use slabs will be required. Floats or darbies shall be used at all edges as necessary to provide a uniform surface plane.
- E. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
- F. Exterior Finish:
  - 1. Burlap Finish: Drag a seamless strip of damp burlap across float-finished concrete, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, gritty texture.
  - 2. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.
  - 3. Medium-to-Coarse-Textured Broom Finish: Provide a coarse finish by striating float-finished concrete surface 1/16 to 1/8 inch deep with a stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic.
- G. Interior (smooth) Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats, or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish floating to a trowel smooth surface.
- H. Apply surface treatments, if any, per manufacturer's recommendations.

### 3.6 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
- B. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.
- C. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- D. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound or a combination of these methods.

### 3.7 CONCRETE PROTECTION

- A. Apply colloidal silicate or silicate based penetrating concrete preservative/sealer treatment to all concrete pavements, sidewalk and curb and gutters at rates as suggested by the manufacturer.

### 3.8 PAVEMENT TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with tolerances of ACI 117 and as follows:
  - 1. Elevation: 1/4 inch.
  - 2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch, minus 1/4 inch.
  - 3. Surface: Gap below 10-foot- long, unleveled straightedge not to exceed 3/16 inch.
  - 4. Joint Spacing: Max 2 times slab thickness (inches) times 24.
  - 5. Contraction Joint Depth: 1/3 slab thickness, no minus.
  - 6. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.

### 3.9 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Allow concrete pavement to cure for 28 days and be dry before starting pavement marking.
- B. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust. Remove any oil or grease.
- C. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings of dimensions indicated with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 16 mils.
- D. Paint shall not be applied at air temperatures below 40 degrees F.

### 3.10 WHEEL STOPS

- A. Securely attach wheel stops into pavement with not less than two galvanized steel dowels embedded in holes drilled or cast into wheel stops at one-quarter to one-third points. Firmly bond each dowel to wheel stop and to pavement. Securely install dowels into pavement and bond to wheel stop. Recess head of dowel beneath top of wheel stop.

### 3.11 SEALANT

- A. The top 1/4 inch of all expansion joints (excluding tooled joints) shall be sealed with a self-leveling polyurethane horizontal sealant complying with ASTM C920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25.

- B. Pavement joints shall be sealed with hot-poured joint sealer in compliance with Article 420.12 and Article 1050.02.
  - 1. The hot poured sealer shall be placed utilizing a "V" shaped wand tip, to allow penetration of the materials into the joints while providing neat completely filled joints.
  - 2. Joints shall be completely filled or over banded not to exceed 1½". Excessive over banding shall be removed as directed by the A/E.

### 3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. The Owner will provide testing services of a soils engineer and/or independent laboratory for this project.
- B. Upon completion of each test and/or inspection, promptly distribute copies of test or inspection reports to A/E.
- C. Aggregate Base Testing Requirements:
  - 1. Standard Proctor Density/Moisture (ASTM D 698):
    - a. 1 per each source of material.
  - 2. Field density/moisture tests (ASTM D6938):
  - 3. 1 per 5000 sq ft.
- D. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
  - 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for the first 10 cu. yd. placed each day, plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. placed.
  - 2. Slump: Required 2"-4" - ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  - 3. Air Content: Required 6% (-2%, +1%) - ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; ASTM C 173/C 173M, volumetric method, for structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample of each concrete mixture.
  - 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test per truck when air temperature is 35 deg F and below and when 85 deg F and above.
  - 5. Unit Weight: ASTM C 567, fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample of each concrete mixture.
  - 6. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.
    - a. Cast and laboratory cure one set of four (4) standard 6" x 12" or 4" x 8" cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
    - b. Cast and field cure one additional standard cylinder specimen for each composite sample for cold or hot weather concrete.
  - 7. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M;
    - a. If 6" x 12" cylinders are taken: test one of four laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days. The forth specimen will be a hold to serve as a spare if specimens do not reach their design strengths.
    - b. If 4" x 8" cylinders are taken: test one of five laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of three specimens at 28 days. The fifth specimen will be a hold to serve as a spare if specimens do not reach their design strengths.
    - c. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two or three specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.

- E. Remove and replace concrete pavement that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section.
- F. Protect concrete from damage. Exclude traffic from pavement for at least 14 days after placement.
- G. Maintain concrete pavement free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep concrete pavement not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

**END OF SECTION 32 1313**

**SECTION 32 1723  
PAVEMENT MARKINGS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Painted markings applied to concrete surfaces.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.
  - 1. Pavement-marking paint, latex.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 55 deg F for water-based materials, and not exceeding 95 deg F.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Dow Chemical Company.
  - 2. PPG Paints.
  - 3. Sherwin-Williams Company.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain pavement-marking paints from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design".

2.3 PAVEMENT-MARKING PAINT

- A. Pavement-Marking Paint, Latex: MPI #97, latex traffic-marking paint.
  - 1. Color: Yellow.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that pavement-marking substrate is dry and in suitable condition to begin pavement marking in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Proceed with pavement marking only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
- B. Allow asphalt paving or concrete surfaces to age for a minimum of 30 days before starting pavement marking.
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.
  - 1. Apply graphic symbols and lettering with paint-resistant, die-cut stencils, firmly secured to asphalt paving or concrete surface. Mask an extended area beyond edges of each stencil to prevent paint application beyond stencil. Apply paint so that it cannot run beneath stencil.

3.3 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect pavement markings from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
- B. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

**END OF SECTION 32 1723**